DODGE

2010 Ram Truck

OWNER'S MANUAL

CHASSIS

VEHICLES SOLD IN CANADA

With respect to any Vehicles Sold in Canada, the name Chrysler Group LLC shall be deemed to be deleted and the name Chrysler Canada Inc. used in substitution therefore.

DRIVING AND ALCOHOL

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents.

Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

WARNING!

Driving after drinking can lead to an accident. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.

This manual illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This manual may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this manual that are not on this vehicle.

Chrysler Group LLC reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and/or make additions to or improvements to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

1

CONTENTS

A MESSAGE FROM CHRYSLER GROUP LLC

Chrysler Group LLC and Cummins® welcome you as a Cummins® turbocharged diesel-powered truck owner. Your diesel truck will sound, feel, drive, and operate differently from a gasoline-powered truck. It is important that you read and understand this manual.

Almost 100% of the heavy duty trucks in the United States and Canada are diesel-powered because of the fuel economy, rugged durability, and high torque which permits pulling heavy loads. Cummins® engines power well over half of these trucks. Now this same technology and proven performance is yours in your truck equipped with the Cummins® turbocharged diesel engine.

You may find that some of the starting, operating, and maintenance procedures are different. However, they are simple to follow and careful adherence to them will ensure that you take full advantage of the features of this engine.

NOTE: Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine/transmission and/or exhaust system damage. Your vehicle's Powertrain Control Systems can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that increase horsepower and torque output such as whether or not performance-enhancing powertrain components, commonly referred to as "performance chips" have been used.

This information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. This information can be retrieved by Chrysler Group LLC, and service and repair facilities, when servicing your vehicle. This information may be used to determine if repair will be covered by warranty.

There is a possibility that the use of a "performance chip" will prohibit the engine from starting. In this instance, the vehicle will need to be serviced by a authorized dealer in order to return the vehicle to its factory settings.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Consult the Table of Contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

Since the specification of your vehicle depends on the items of equipment ordered, certain descriptions and illustrations may differ from your vehicle's equipment

The detailed index at the back of this Owner's Manual contains a complete listing of all subjects.

Consult the following table for a description of the symbols that may be used on your vehicle or throughout this Owner's Manual:


WATER IN FUEL
REAR WINDOW WIPER
WINDSHIELD WIPER INTERMITTENT
EXTERIOR BULB FAILURE
HIGH BEAM
TURN SIGNALS
UPPER AIR OUTLET
HEATED SEAT LOW
DOOR LOCK
ADJUSTABLE PEDALS
ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL
ESP BAS
ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM / BRAKE ASSIST SYSTEM
FUEL
REAR WINDOW INTERMITTENT WIPER
WINDSHIELD WASHER
MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH
LOW BEAM
KEY ACTIVATE (POWER OUTLET)
UPPER AND LOWER AIR OUTLET
HEATED SEAT HIGH
WINDOW LIFT
TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR
HILL DESCENT CONTROL
BRAKE
BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE
FUEL FILL SIDE
REAR WINDOW WASHER
WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID LEVEL
DOME LIGHT
FRONT FOG LIGHT
HOOD RELEASE
LOWER AIR OUTLET
RECIRCULATION
CONVERTIBLE 4 WINDOW DOWN
TRACTION CONTROL
AWD!
4 ALL WHEEL DRIVE
ABS
FAILURE OF ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM
ENGINE OIL
REAR WINDOW DEFROST
WINDSHIELD, ELECTRICALLY HEATED
PARK LIGHTS
REAR FOG LAMP
LIFTGATE RELEASE AND LIFTGATE OPEN
DEFROST AND LOWER AIR OUTLET
VENTILATING FAN
WINDOW LOCK
ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL
4WD!
FOUR WHEEL DRIVE
BRAKE
BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE
BATTERY CHARGING
HEATED MIRROR
WINDSHIELD DEFROST
INSTRUMENT PANEL ILLUMINATION
SEAT BELT
SLIDING DOOR
TRUNK / DECK RELEASE
AIR CONDITIONING
CHILD SEAT TETHER ANCHOR
VOICE RECOGNITION BUTTON
WARNING
TOW/ HAUL
TOW / HAUL
GLOW PLUG
POWER STEERING FLUID
WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER
SIDE AIRBAG
AIRBAG
SLIDING DOOR
EMERGENCY RELEASE HANDLE
LIGHTER
LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHER FOR CHILDREN (LATCH)
UCONNECT™ BUTTON
HAZARD
4 LOW
FOUR WHEEL DRIVE LOW
MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LIGHT
TRANS OIL TEMP
ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE
SRS AIRBAG
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM
PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF
DOOR AJAR
CONVERTIBLE TOP DOWN
CONVERTIBLE TOP UP
HORN
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL (SI)
A/C PUSH
AIR CONDITIONER
OFF
ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF
010507683

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

This Owner's Manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures that could result in an accident or bodily injury. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures that could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire manual, you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS

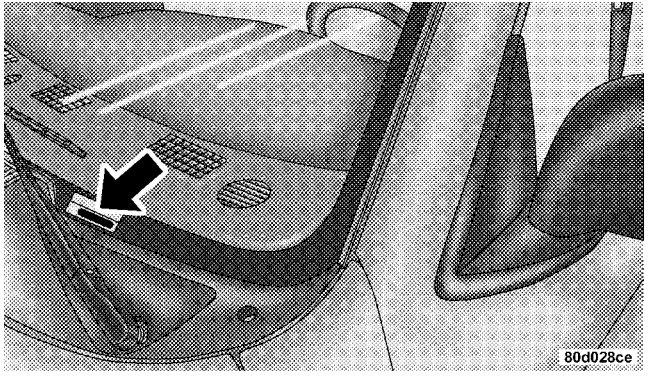
The Manufacturer's Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion/camper manufacturers/body builders. Refer to the Warranty information book, Section 2.1.C. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion/camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your authorized dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

For information on the Body Builders Guide refer to: www.dodgebodybuilder.com. This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for your vehicle. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your authorized dealer.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel, visible through the windshield. This number also appears on the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle, the vehicle registration and title.



Vehicle Identification Number

NOTE: It is illegal to remove or alter the VIN.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS

WARNING!

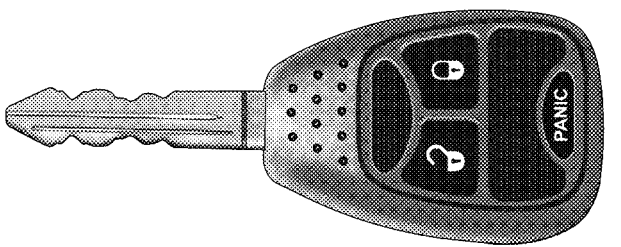
Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS

The authorized dealer that sold you your vehicle has the key code numbers for your vehicle locks. These numbers can be used to order duplicate keys from your authorized dealer. Ask your authorized dealer for these numbers and keep them in a safe place.

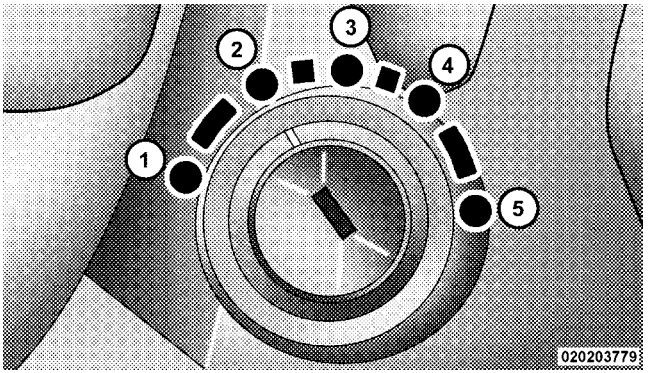


Ignition Key

Ignition Key Removal

Automatic Transmission

Place the shift lever in PARK. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position, and remove the key.



Ignition Switch Positions

1 — ACC (ACCESSORY)
2 — LOCK
3 — OFF
4 — ON/RUN
5 — START

NOTE:

- If you try to remove the key before you place the shift lever in PARK, the key may become trapped temporarily in the ignition cylinder. If this occurs, rotate the key to the right slightly, then remove the key as described. If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the key in the ignition cylinder to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the key cannot be removed until you obtain service.
- The power window switches (if equipped), radio (if equipped), power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned OFF. Opening either front door will cancel this feature.

WARNING!

Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

CAUTION!

An unlocked car is an invitation to thieves. Always remove key from the ignition and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

Locking Doors With A Key

You can insert the key with either side up. To lock the door, turn the key rearward. To unlock the door, turn the key forward.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with a passive steering wheel lock. This lock prevents steering the vehicle without the key fob. If the steering wheel is moved approximately a half turn in either direction and the key fob is not in the ignition switch, the steering wheel will lock.

To Manually Lock the Steering Wheel

With the engine running, turn the steering wheel upside down, turn off the engine and remove the key fob. Turn the steering wheel slightly in either direction until the lock engages.

To Release the Steering Wheel Lock

Insert the key fob into the ignition switch and start the engine. If the key fob is difficult to turn, move the wheel slightly to the right or left to disengage the lock.

NOTE: If you turned the wheel to the right to engage the lock, you must turn the wheel slightly to the right to disengage it. If you turned the wheel to the left to engage the lock, turn the wheel slightly to the left to disengage it.

SENTRY KEY®

The Sentry Key® Immobilizer System prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The system uses ignition keys that have an embedded electronic chip (transponder) to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only keys that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two seconds if someone uses an invalid key to try to start the engine.

NOTE: A key that has not been programmed is also considered an invalid key, even if it is cut to fit the ignition switch lock cylinder for that vehicle.

During normal operation, after turning on the ignition switch, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on for three seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a problem with the electronics. In addition, if the Vehicle Security Light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid key to try to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two seconds.

If the Vehicle Security Light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible by an authorized dealer.

NOTE: The Sentry Key® Immobilizer System is not compatible with some aftermarket remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.

All of the keys provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

Replacement Keys

NOTE: Only keys that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a Sentry Key® is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

CAUTION!

Always remove the Sentry Keys® from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

At the time of purchase, the original owner is provided with a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN). Keep the PIN in a secure location. This number is required for authorized dealer replacement of keys. Duplication of keys may be performed at an authorized

dealer or by following the customer key programming procedure. This procedure consists of programming a blank key to the vehicle electronics. A blank key is one that has never been programmed.

NOTE: When having the Sentry Key® Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to an authorized dealer.

Customer Key Programming

If you have two valid Sentry Keys®, you can program new Sentry Keys® to the system by performing the following procedure:

1. Cut the additional Sentry Key® Transponder blank(s) to match the ignition switch lock cylinder key code.

2. Insert the first valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position for at least three seconds, but no longer than 15 seconds. Then, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the first key.

3. Insert the second valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position within 15 seconds. After 10 seconds, a chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Light will begin to flash. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the second key.

4. Insert a blank Sentry Key® into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position within 60 seconds. After 10 seconds, a single chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Light will stop flashing. To indicate that programming is complete, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on again for three seconds and then turn off.

The new Sentry Key® is programmed. **The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter will also be programmed during this procedure.**

Repeat this procedure to program up to eight keys. If you do not have a programmed Sentry Key®, contact your authorized dealer for details.

NOTE: If a programmed key is lost, see your authorized dealer to have all remaining keys erased from the system's memory. This will prevent the lost key from starting your vehicle. The remaining keys must then be reprogrammed. All vehicle keys must be taken to an authorized dealer at the time of service to be reprogrammed.

General Information

The Sentry Key® system complies with FCC rules Part 15 and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference that may be received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM — IF EQUIPPED

This Vehicle Security Alarm monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the alarm is activated, the Vehicle Security Alarm provides both audible and visible signals. For the first three minutes the horn will sound and the headlights, park lamps and/or turn signals will flash and Vehicle Security Light will flash repeatedly. For an additional 15 minutes only, the headlights, park lamps and/or turn signals and Vehicle Security Light will flash. The engine will run only if a valid Sentry Key® is used to start the vehicle. Use of the Sentry Key® will disable the alarm.

Rearming of the System

The Vehicle Security Alarm will rearm itself after the 15 additional minutes of headlights and Vehicle Security Light flashing, if the Vehicle Security Alarm has not been disabled. If the condition which initiated the alarm is still present, the Vehicle Security Alarm will ignore that condition and monitor the remaining doors and ignition.

To Set the Alarm

The Vehicle Security Alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed, the Vehicle Security Light in the instrument cluster will flash rapidly to signal that the Vehicle Security Alarm is arming. The Vehicle Security Light in the instrument panel cluster will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the Vehicle Security Light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the Vehicle Security Alarm is armed.

NOTE: If the Vehicle Security Light stays on continuously during vehicle operation, have the Vehicle Security Alarm checked by an authorized dealer.

To Disarm the System

Use the RKE transmitter to unlock the door. If something has triggered the Vehicle Security Alarm in your absence, the horn will sound three times when you unlock the doors and the Vehicle Security Light will flash for 30 seconds. Check the vehicle for tampering.

The Vehicle Security Alarm will also disarm if the vehicle is started with a programmed Sentry Key®. If an unprogrammed Sentry Key® is used to start a vehicle, the engine will run for two seconds and then the Security Alarm will be initiated. To exit the alarming mode, press the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button, or start the vehicle with a programmed Sentry Key®.

The Vehicle Security Alarm is designed to protect your vehicle; however, you can create conditions where the Vehicle Security Alarm will arm unexpectedly. If you remain in the vehicle and lock the doors with the RKE transmitter, the alarm will sound when you pull the door handle to exit.

ILLUMINATED ENTRY — IF EQUIPPED

The courtesy lights will turn on when you use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or open the doors. This feature is only available if you have Remote Keyless Entry.

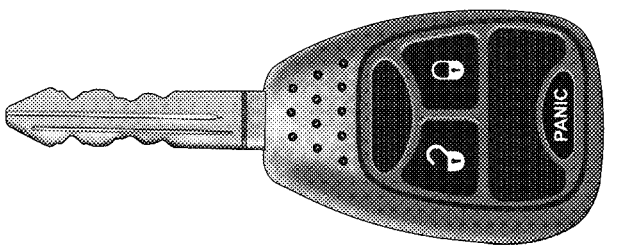
The lights will fade to off after approximately 30 seconds, or they will immediately fade to off once the ignition switch is turned ON.

NOTE:

- The front courtesy overhead console and door courtesy lights do not turn off if the dimmer control is in the interior lights on position (extreme top position).
- The Illuminated Entry system will not operate if the dimmer control is in the extreme downward position.

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) — IF EQUIPPED

The system allows you to lock or unlock the doors from distances up to approximately 66 ft (20 m) using a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. The RKE transmitter does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.



8163e6a8

Three Button RKE Transmitter

To Unlock the Doors

Press and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter once to unlock only the driver's door or twice to unlock all the doors. When the UNLOCK button is pressed, the illuminated entry will initiate, the parking lights will flash on twice and, if installed, the cargo lamp will turn on for 30 seconds.

The system can be programmed to unlock all the doors or the driver's door only upon the first UNLOCK button press by using the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the LOCK button on your RKE transmitter.

3. Continue to hold the LOCK button at least 4 seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the UNLOCK button while still holding the LOCK button.

4. Release both buttons at the same time.

5. This will allow you to unlock all doors on the first press of the UNLOCK button.

6. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

To Lock the Doors

Press and release the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter to lock all doors. If the ignition is OFF, when the doors are locked, the parking lights will flash on once and the horn will chirp once.

The Horn Chirp feature is activated when shipped from the assembly plant. If desired, this feature can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the LOCK button on a programmed (i.e., functional) RKE transmitter.

3. Continue to hold the LOCK button, wait at least 4 seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the PANIC button. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

This vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant with the park lamp flash feature activated. If desired, this feature can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the UNLOCK button on a programmed (i.e., functional) RKE transmitter.

3. Continue to hold the UNLOCK button, wait at least 4 seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the LOCK button. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

Using the Panic Alarm

To activate the Panic Mode while the ignition is OFF, press and release the PANIC button on the RKE transmitter once. When the Panic Mode is activated, the interior lights will illuminate, the headlights and parking lights will flash, and the horn will sound.

To cancel the Panic Mode, press and release the PANIC button on the transmitter a second time, after five seconds. Panic Mode will automatically cancel after three minutes, or if the vehicle is started and exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). During the Panic Mode, the door locks and RKE systems will function normally. Panic Mode will not disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm System on vehicles so equipped.

Programming Additional Transmitters

Refer to Sentry Key® "Customer Key Programming."

If you do not have a programmed RKE transmitter, contact your authorized dealer for details.

General Information

This device complies with part 15 of FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.

2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

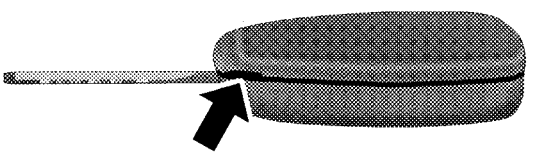
If your RKE transmitter fails to operate from a normal distance, check for these two conditions:

1. Weak battery in RKE transmitter. The expected life of the battery is from one to two years.

2. Closeness to a radio transmitter such as a radio station tower, airport transmitter, and some mobile or CB radios.

Transmitter Battery Replacement

1. With RKE transmitter buttons facing down, use a flat blade or dime to pry the two halves of the RKE transmitter apart. Make sure not to damage the rubber gasket during removal.



81182c72

RKE Transmitter Battery Replacement

2. Remove and replace the battery. When replacing the battery, match the + sign on battery to the + sign on the inside of the battery clip, located on back cover. Avoid touching the new battery with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.

3. To reassemble the RKE transmitter case, snap the two halves of the case together. Make sure there is an even "gap" between the two halves. If equipped, install and tighten the screw until snug. Test the RKE transmitter operation.

NOTE:

- Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate
- The recommended replacement battery is CR2032.
- Do not touch the battery terminals that are on the back housing or the printed circuit board.

REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

This system uses the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to start the engine conveniently from outside the vehicle while still maintaining security. The system has a targeted range of approximately 328 ft (100 m).

NOTE: The vehicle must be equipped with an automatic transmission to be equipped with Remote Start.

How to Use Remote Start

All of the following conditions must be met before the engine will remote start:

- Shift lever in PARK
- Doors closed
- Hood closed
- Hazard switch off
- Brake switch inactive (brake pedal not pressed)

- Ignition key removed from ignition switch
- Battery at an acceptable charge level
- RKE PANIC button not pressed

WARNING!

- **Do not start or run an engine in a closed garage or confined area. Exhaust gas contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause serious injury or death when inhaled.**
- **Keep Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters away from children. Operation of the Remote Start System, windows, door locks or other controls could cause serious injury or death.**

To Enter Remote Start

Press and release the REMOTE START button on the RKE transmitter twice, within five seconds. The parking lights will flash and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Then, the engine will start and the vehicle will remain in the Remote Start mode for a 15-minute cycle.

NOTE:

- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.
- For security, power window and power sunroof operation (if equipped) are disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the RKE transmitter. However, the ignition switch must be cycled to the ON position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.

Remote start will also cancel if any of the following occur:

- The engine stalls or RPM exceeds 2500
- Any engine warning lamps come on
- The hood is opened
- The hazard switch is pressed
- The transmission is moved out of PARK
- The brake pedal is pressed

To Exit Remote Start Mode without Driving the Vehicle

Press and release the REMOTE START button one time, or allow the engine to run for the entire 15-minute cycle.

NOTE: To avoid unintentional shut downs, the system will disable the one time press of the REMOTE START button for two seconds after receiving a valid Remote Start request.

To Exit Remote Start Mode and Drive the Vehicle

Before the end of the 15-minute cycle, press and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter to unlock the doors and disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm (if equipped). Then, prior to the end of the 15-minute cycle, insert the key into the ignition switch and turn the switch to the ON position.

NOTE:

- The ignition switch must be in the ON position in order to drive the vehicle.

DOOR LOCKS

Manual Door Locks

Front and rear doors may be locked by moving the lock plunger up or down.

All doors may be opened with the inside door handle without lifting the lock plunger. Doors locked before closing will remain locked when closed.

The ignition key will unlock all the locks on your vehicle.

WARNING!

- **For personal security and safety in the event of an accident, lock the vehicle doors when you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

Power Door Locks — If Equipped

A power door lock switch is on each front door trim panel. Use this switch to lock or unlock the doors.

Power Door Lock Switch Location

If you press the power door lock switch while the key is in the ignition, and any front door is open, the power locks will not operate. This prevents you from accidentally locking your keys in the vehicle. Removing the key or closing the door will allow the locks to operate. A chime will sound if the key is in the ignition switch and a door is open, as a reminder to remove the key.

Automatic Door Locks – If Equipped
If this feature is enabled, your door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h).

Automatic Door Lock Programming
This feature is enabled when your vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant and can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.

2. Fasten your seat belt. (Fastening the seat belt will cancel any chiming that may confuse you during this programming procedure.)

3. Place the key into the ignition.

4. Within 15 seconds, cycle the key from the LOCK position to the ON/RUN position a minimum of four times, ending in the ON/RUN position. **(Do not start the engine)**.

5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door lock switch in the LOCK direction.

6. A single chime will be heard to indicate the feature has been disabled.

7. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

8. If a chime is not heard, program mode was canceled before the feature could be disabled. If necessary, repeat the above procedure.

Auto Unlock On Exit — If Equipped
This feature unlocks all of the doors of the vehicle when any door is opened. This will occur only after the vehicle has been shifted into the PARK position after the vehicle has been driven (shifted out of PARK and all doors closed).

Auto Unlock On Exit Programming — If Equipped
Customer programming sequence to enable or disable the Auto Unlock on Exit feature:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.

2. Fasten your seat belt. (Fastening the seat belt will cancel any chimes that may be confusing during this programming procedure.)

3. Insert the key into the ignition.

4. Within 15 seconds, cycle the key from the LOCK position to the ON/RUN position a minimum of four times, ending in the ON/RUN position. **(Do not start the engine)**.

5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door lock switch in the UNLOCK direction.

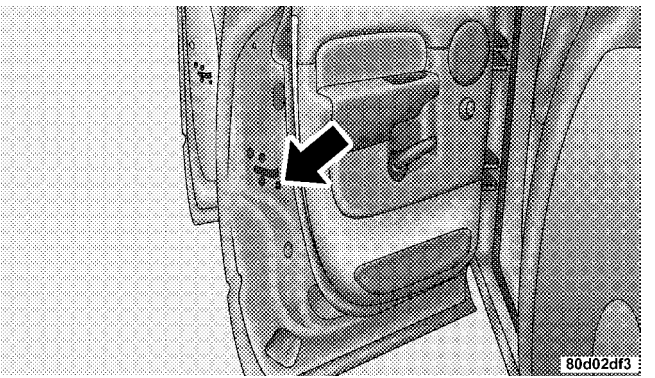
6. A single chime will sound to indicate the feature has been changed.

7. Repeat the above steps to alternate the availability of this feature.

8. If a chime is not heard, the program mode was canceled before the feature could be changed. If necessary, repeat the above procedure.

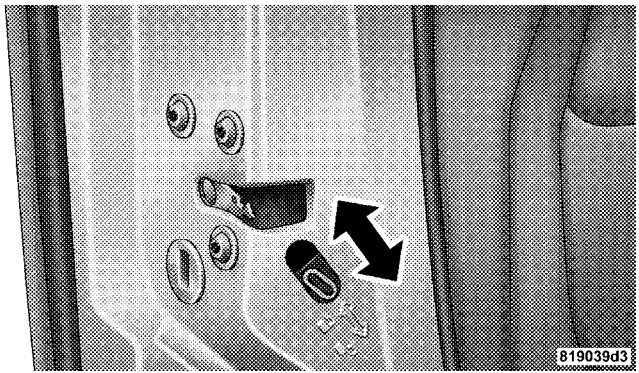
Child Protection Door Lock — Quad Cab Only

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors of your vehicle have the Child Protection Door Lock system.



Child Protection Door Lock Location

To use the system, open each rear door, slide the lever UP to engage the locks and DOWN to disengage the child protection door locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even, if the inside door LOCK is in the UNLOCKED position.



Child Door Lock Control

WARNING!

Avoid trapping anyone in a vehicle in a collision. Remember that the rear doors can only be opened from the outside when the child protection locks are engaged.

NOTE: After setting the Child Protection Door Lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.

For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the UNLOCK position, roll down the window and open the door with the outside door handle.

WINDOWS

Power Windows – If Equipped

Power Window Switches

The control on the left front door panel has up-down switches that give you fingertip control of all power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on the front passenger door for passenger window control and on the rear doors of Quad Cab® models. The windows will operate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or ACC (Accessory) position and for ten minutes after the ignition is turned OFF or a front door is opened.

NOTE: The Power Accessory Delay feature will allow the power windows to operate for 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF.

WARNING!

Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

Auto-Down (Driver's Side Only)
The driver's window switch has an Auto-Down feature. Press the window switch past the detent, release, and the window will go down automatically.

Window Lockout Switch (4-Door Models Only)
The window lockout switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the other doors. To disable the window controls on the other doors, press the window lockout switch. To enable the window controls, press the window lockout switch again.

Window Lockout Switch

Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down or in partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting

occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting.

OCCUPANT RESTRAINTS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

- Three-point lap and shoulder belts for the driver and all passengers
- Advanced Front Airbags for driver and front passenger — if equipped
- An energy-absorbing steering column and steering wheel
- Knee bolsters/blockers for front seat occupants

If you will be carrying children too small for adult-sized seat belts, the seat belts or the Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren (LATCH) feature also can be used to hold infant and child restraint systems.

NOTE: The Advanced Front Airbags have a multistage inflator design. This allows the airbag to have different rates of inflation based on severity and type of collision.

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

WARNING!

In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. **Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.**

Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the Quad Cab® front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts. The belt webbing retractor is designed to lock during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. But in a collision, the belt will lock and reduce the risk of you striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out.

WARNING!

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

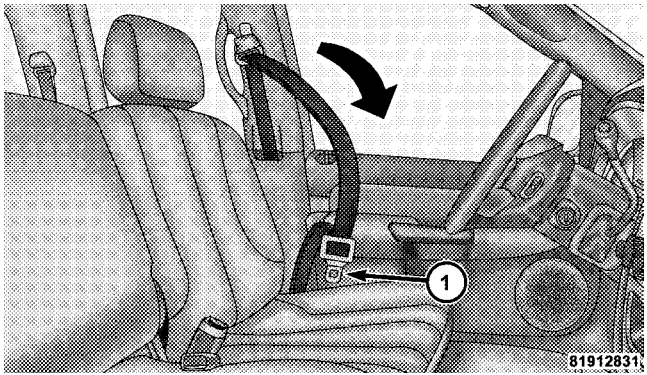
WARNING!

- **Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is dangerous. Seat belts are designed to go around the large bones of your body. These are the strongest parts of your body and can take the forces of a collision best. Wearing your belt in the wrong place could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of part of the belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.**
- **Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in an accident, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.**

Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

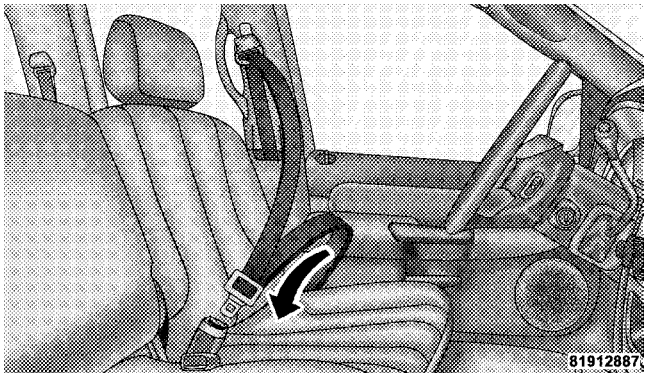
1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.

2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, next to your arm in the rear seat. Grasp the latch plate and pull out the belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the belt to go around your lap.



1 — Latch Plate

3. When the belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



Latch Plate To Buckle

WARNING!

• A belt buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

• A belt that is too loose will not protect you as well. In a sudden stop you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.

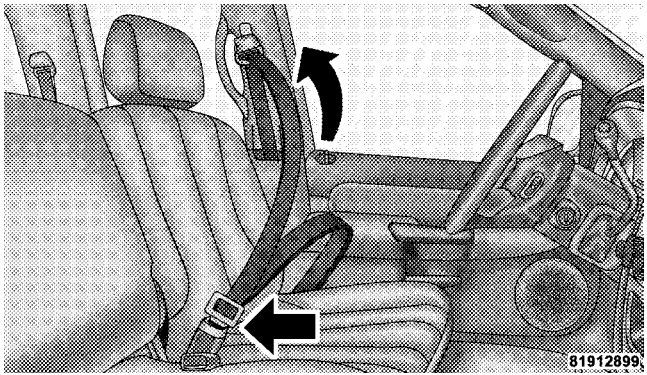
• A belt that is worn under your arm is very dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. And a belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

• A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.

4. Position the lap belt across your thighs, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug belt reduces the risk of sliding under the belt in a collision.



Removing Slack From Belt

WARNING!

• A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of internal injury in a collision. The belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap belt as low as possible and keep it snug.

• A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt is straight. If you can't straighten a belt in a vehicle, take it to your authorized dealer and have it fixed.

5. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the belt.

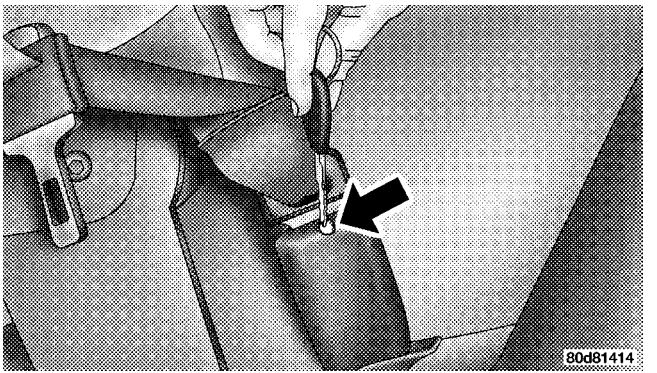
6. To release the belt, push the red button on the buckle. The belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the belt to retract fully.

WARNING!

A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.) or if the airbag deployed.

Regular Cab Front Center Three Point Belt

1. The front center seat belt on the Regular Cab may be disconnected to open up utilization of the storage areas behind the front seats. The black latch plate can be detached from the black keyed seat belt buckle located on the inboard side of the passenger seat. Insert the vehicle ignition key into the center white slot on the black buckle. The black buckle latch plate can be removed when the key is pressed into the buckle. Allow the retractor to take up the surplus webbing, and the buckles will hang vertically from the cab back exit bezel, thus freeing up all the area behind the front seats.



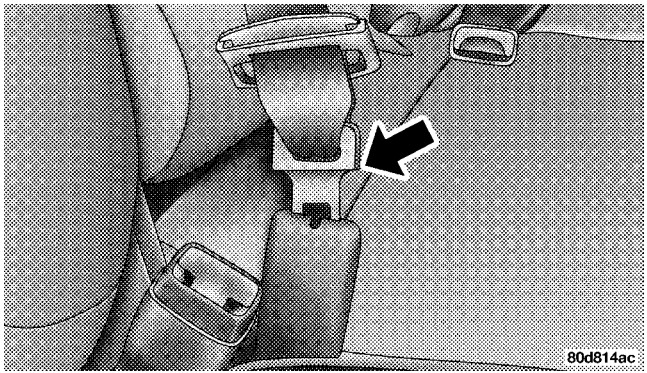
Detaching Buckle With Key

2. To reattach the seat belt to the front center seat, pull the black buckle latch plate forward from the cab back

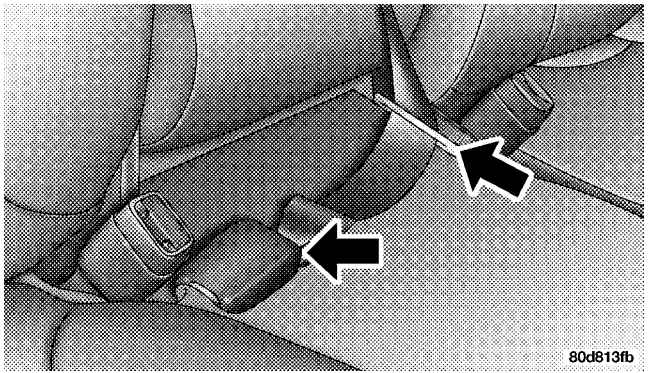
panel and insert it into the black keyed buckle until there is an audible "click". For proper seatbelt usage, refer "Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions" in this section.

WARNING!

- **If the black latch and black buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.**
- **When reattaching the black latch and black buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the black latch and black buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the black latch and black buckle.**



Inserting Latch Plate



In Use Position

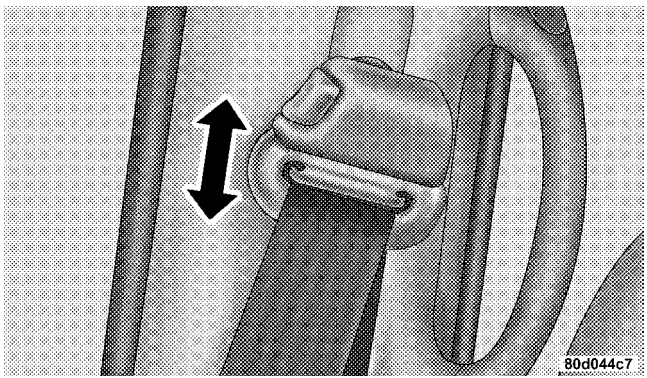
WARNING!

- **If the black latch and black buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.**
- **When reattaching the black latch and black buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the black latch and black buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the black latch and black buckle.**

Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the front row outboard seats, the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to help position the belt

away from your neck. Press the button located on the upper belt guide, and then move it up or down to the position that fits you best.



Adjusting Upper Shoulder Belt

As a guide, if you are shorter than average you will prefer a lower position, and if you are taller than average you will prefer a higher position. When you release the anchorage, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

Automatic Locking Restraint (ALR) Mode – If Equipped

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically prelocked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The Automatic Locking Mode is available on all passenger seating positions with a combination lap/shoulder belt.

When To Use The Automatic Locking Mode

Use the Automatic Locking Mode any time a child safety seat is installed in a passenger seating position. Children 12 years old and younger should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

How To Use The Automatic Locking Mode

1. Buckle the combination lap/shoulder belt.

2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is extracted.

3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode
Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Center Lap Belts

The center seating position for the Quad Cab® front seat has a lap belt only. To fasten the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull. To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and erect in the seat, then adjust the belt as tightly as is comfortable.

WARNING!

- **A lap belt worn too loose or too high is dangerous.**
- **A belt worn too loose can allow you to slip down and under the belt in a collision.**
- **A belt that is too loose or too high will apply crash forces to the abdomen, not to the stronger hip bones. In either case, the risk of internal injuries is greater. Wear a lap belt low and snug.**

Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert®)

If the driver's seat belt has not been buckled within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle and if the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), the BeltAlert® will alert the driver to buckle the seat belt. The driver should also instruct all other occupants to buckle their seat belts. Once the warning is triggered, the BeltAlert® will continue to chime and flash the Seat Belt Reminder Light for 96 seconds or until the driver's seat belt is buckled. The

BeltAlert® will be reactivated if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled for more than 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h).

BeltAlert® can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer or by following these steps:

NOTE: The following steps must occur within the first 60 seconds of the ignition switch being turned to the ON or START position. Chrysler Group LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert®.

1. With all doors closed and the ignition switch in any position except ON or START, buckle the driver's seat belt.

2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for the Seat Belt Reminder Light to turn off.

3. Within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle, unbuckle and then re-buckle the driver's seat belt at least three times within 10 seconds, ending with the seat belt buckled.

4. Turn off the engine. A single chime will sound to signify that you have successfully completed the programming.

BeltAlert® can be reactivated by repeating this procedure.

NOTE: Although BeltAlert® has been deactivated, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will continue to illuminate while the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled.

Seat Belts and Pregnant Women

We recommend that pregnant women use seat belts throughout their pregnancies. Keeping the mother safe is the best way to keep the baby safe.

Pregnant women should wear the lap part of the belt across the thighs and as snug against the hips as possible. Keep the belt low so that it does not come across the abdomen. That way the strong bones of the hips will take the force if there is a collision.

Seat Belt Extender

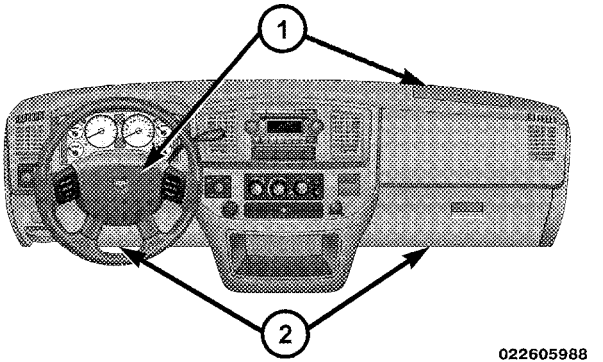
If a seat belt is too short even when fully extended, your authorized dealer can provide you with a seat belt extender. This extender should be used only if the existing belt is not long enough. When it is not required, remove the extender and store it.

WARNING!

Using a seat belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury in a collision. Only use the seat belt extender when the lap belt is not long enough when it is worn low and snug, and in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the extender when not needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) – Airbags

This vehicle has airbags for both the driver and front passenger (if equipped) as a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver's front airbag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger's front airbag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words SRS AIRBAG are embossed on the airbag covers.



1 — Driver and Passenger Airbags
2 — Knee Bolsters

NOTE: These airbags are certified to the new Federal regulations for Advanced Airbags.

The Advanced Front Airbags have a multistage inflator design. This allows the airbag to have different rates of inflation based on the severity and type of collision.

This vehicle may also be equipped **without** a passenger's front airbag. In this case the passenger's side airbag will be replaced with a storage bin.

NOTE: Airbag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim; but they will open during airbag deployment.

Airbag System Components
The airbag system consists of the following:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Front Airbag
- Front Passenger Airbag (if equipped)
- Front and Side Impact Sensors — if equipped
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolster
- Passenger's Side Front Airbag ON/OFF Switch (Regular Cab Vehicles Only) — if equipped

Advanced Front Airbag Features

The Advanced Front Airbag system has multistage driver and front passenger airbags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the impact sensors at the front of the car (if equipped).

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires airbag deployment. The timing of

the second stage determines whether the output force is low, medium, or high. If a low output is sufficient to meet the need, the remaining gas in the inflator is expended.

WARNING!

- **Do not put anything on or around the airbag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the airbags and you could be injured because the airbags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the airbag cushions are designed to open only when the airbags are inflating.**
- **Do not drill, cut or tamper with the knee bolster in any way.**
- **Do not mount any accessories to the knee bolster such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.**

Knee Impact Bolsters

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and the front passenger, and position everyone for the best interaction with the Advanced Front Airbag.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying airbag:

Children 12 years and under should ride buckled up in a rear seat, if available.

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat, refer to the "Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (if equipped)" in this section

WARNING!

Infants in rear-facing child restraints must NEVER ride in the front seat of a vehicle with a passenger front airbag unless the airbag is turned off (Regular Cab Vehicles Only). An airbag deployment can cause severe injury or death to infants in that position. Refer to the "Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (if equipped)" in this section.

Children that are not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (see Section on Child Restraints) should be secured in the rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in the rear seat. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.

If a child from 1 to 12 years old (not in a rear facing child seat) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint. (Refer to information on Child Restraints in this section.)

You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.

All occupants should ALWAYS wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.

The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the Advanced Front Airbags room to inflate.

Do not lean against the door. If your vehicle has side airbags, and deployment occurs, the side airbags will inflate forcefully into the space between you and the door.

If the airbag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, contact the Customer Center. Phone numbers are provided under "If You Need Assistance" in Section 9 of this manual.

WARNING!

- **Relying on the airbags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The airbags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the airbags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have airbags.**
- **Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during front airbag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Airbags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Side airbags also need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door. Sit upright in the center of the seat.**

Airbag Deployment Sensors and Controls

Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
The **ORC** is part of a Federally regulated safety system required for this vehicle.

The ORC determines if deployment of the front airbags in a frontal collision is required. Based on the impact sensors signals, a central electronic ORC deploys the Advanced Front Airbags, as required, depending on severity and type of impact.

Advanced Front Airbags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts in certain frontal collisions depending on the severity and

type of collision. Advanced Front Airbags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, or side collisions.

The Advanced Front Airbags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions. On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, Advanced Front Airbags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because airbag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an airbag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating airbag.

The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON position. If the key is in the LOCK position, in the ACC position, or not in the ignition, the airbags are not on and will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the airbags even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.

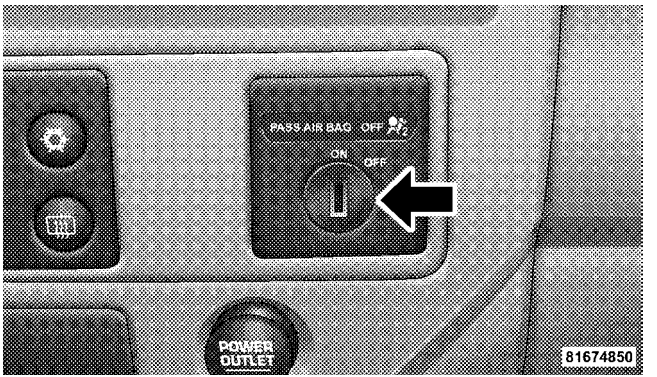
Also, the ORC turns on the Airbag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately six to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition is first turned on. After the self-check, the Airbag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Airbag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound if the light comes on again after initial startup.

It also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument cluster Airbag Warning Light if a malfunction is noted. The diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction.

WARNING!

Ignoring the Airbag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the airbags to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have the airbag system checked right away.

Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (Regular Cab Vehicles Only) – If Equipped



Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch

The passenger front airbag is to be turned off only if the passenger:

- is an infant (less than one year old) who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because the rear seat is too small for a rear-facing infant restraint or because the infant has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the infant,
- is a child, age one to 12 who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because there is no rear seat position available, or because the child has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the child,
- has a medical condition which makes passenger airbag (if equipped) inflation (deployment) a greater risk for the passenger than the risk of hitting the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash.

WARNING!

Whenever an airbag is turned off, even a lap/shoulder belted passenger may hit their head, neck, or chest on the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash. This may result in serious injury or death.

To Shut Off the Passenger Airbag (Regular Cab Vehicles Only) – If Equipped

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (if equipped), push the key in and turn clockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will shut off the passenger airbag (if equipped). The OFF light near the switch will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

To Turn On the Passenger Airbag (Regular Cab Vehicles Only) – If Equipped

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (If Equipped), push the key in and turn counterclockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will turn on the passenger airbag (if equipped). The OFF light near the switch will be off when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Driver and Passenger Airbag Inflator Units

The Driver and Passenger Airbag/Inflator Units are located in the center of the steering wheel and the right side of the instrument panel. When the ORC detects a collision requiring the airbags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the Advanced Front Airbags. Different airbag inflation rates are possible, based on the collision type and severity. The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the bags inflate to their full size. The bags fully inflate in about 50 to 70 milliseconds. This is about half of the time it takes to blink your eyes. The bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

The driver front airbag gas is vented through the vent holes in the sides of the airbag. The passenger front airbag gas is vented through the vent holes in the sides of the airbag. In this way, the airbags do not interfere with your control of the vehicle.

Front Impact Sensors — If Equipped

In front impacts, impact sensors aid the ORC in determining appropriate response to impact events. Additional sensors in the ORC determine the level of airbag deployment and provide verification.

Enhanced Accident Response System

In the event of an impact causing airbag deployment, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine.
- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power or until the ignition key is turned off.
- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power or until the ignition key is removed.
- Unlock the doors automatically (if equipped with power door locks).

If a Deployment Occurs

The airbags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

NOTE: Front and/or side airbags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the airbag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the airbags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The nylon airbag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the driver and front passenger as the airbags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.

- As the airbags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for airbag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

Do not drive your vehicle after the airbags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the airbags will not be in place to protect you.

WARNING!

Deployed airbags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the airbags, seat belt pretensioners, and the front passenger seat belt retractor assembly replaced by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) system serviced as well.

Maintaining Your Airbag System

WARNING!

- **Modifications to any part of the airbag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the airbag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.**
- **It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the airbag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an airbag system.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Do not attempt to modify any part of your advanced airbag system. The airbag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any advanced airbag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion, needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to your authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify an advanced airbag system for persons with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.**

Airbag Warning Light

You will want to have the airbags ready to inflate for your protection in a collision. While the airbag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the system immediately.

- The Airbag Warning Light does not come on for approximately six to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first turned ON.
- The light remains on after the approximate four to six-second interval.
- The light comes on and remains on while driving.

NOTE: If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. The airbags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Promptly check the fuse block for blown fuses. Refer to the label located on the inside of the fuse block cover for the proper airbag fuses. See your authorized dealer if the fuse is good.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

In the event of an accident, your vehicle is designed to record up to five seconds of specific vehicle data parameters (see list below) in an event data recorder prior to the moment of airbag deployment, or near deployment (if applicable), and up to a quarter second of either high-speed deceleration data or change in velocity during and/or after airbag deployment or near-deployment. EDR data is ONLY recorded if an airbag deploys, or nearly deploys, and is otherwise unavailable.

NOTE:

1. A near-deployment event occurs when the airbag sensor detects severe vehicle deceleration usually indicative of a crash, but not severe enough to warrant airbag deployment.

2. Under certain circumstances, EDR data may not be recorded (e.g., loss of battery power).

In conjunction with other data gathered during a complete accident investigation, the electronic data may be used by Chrysler Group LLC and others to learn more about the possible causes of crashes and associated injuries in order to assess and improve vehicle performance. In addition to crash investigations initiated by Chrysler Group LLC, such investigations may be requested by customers, insurance carriers, government officials, and professional crash researchers, such as those associated with universities, and with hospital and insurance organizations.

In the event that an investigation is undertaken by Chrysler Group LLC (regardless of initiative), the company or its designated representative will first obtain permission of the appropriate custodial entity for the vehicle (usually the vehicle owner or lessee) before accessing the electronic data stored, unless ordered to download data by a court with legal jurisdiction (i.e., pursuant to a warrant). A copy of the data will be provided to the custodial entity upon request. General data that does not identify particular vehicles or crashes may be released for incorporation in aggregate crash databases, such as those maintained by the U.S. government and various states. Data of a potentially sensitive nature, such as would identify a particular driver, vehicle, or crash, will be treated confidentially. Confidential data will not be disclosed by Chrysler Group LLC to any third party except when:

1. Used for research purposes, such as to match data with a particular crash record in an aggregate database, provided confidentiality of personal data is thereafter preserved.

2. Used in defense of litigation involving a Chrysler Group LLC product.

3. Requested by police under a legal warrant.
4. Otherwise required by law.

Data parameters that are recorded:

- Diagnostic trouble code(s) and warning light status for electronically-controlled safety systems, including the airbag system
- Vehicle speed
- Engine RPM
- Brake switch status
- Pedal position
- And other parameters depending on vehicle configuration

Child Restraint

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up all the time, including babies and children. Every state in the United States and all Canadian provinces require that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years and under should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

WARNING!

In a collision, an unrestrained child, even a tiny baby, can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap can become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

Infants and Small Children

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Use the restraint that is correct for your child.

- Safety experts recommend that children ride rearward-facing in the vehicle until they are at least one year old and weigh at least 20 lbs (9 kg). Two types of child restraints can be used rearward-facing: infant carriers and ″convertible″ child seats. Both types of child restraints are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.
- The infant carrier is only used rearward-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children who weigh up to about 20 lbs (9 kg). ″Convertible″ child seats can be used either rearward-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rearward-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rearward-facing by children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) but are less than one year old.
- Rearward-facing child seats must **NEVER** be used in the front seat of a vehicle with a front passenger airbag (if equipped) unless the airbag is turned off. An airbag deployment could cause severe injury or death to infants in this position.
- Children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) and who are older than one year can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who weigh 20 to 40 lbs (9 to 18 kg) and who are older than one year. These child seats are also held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.
- The belt-positioning booster seat is for children weighing more than 40 lbs (18 kg), but who are still too small to fit the vehicle's seat belts properly. If the child

cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seat back, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and booster seat are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.

NOTE: For additional information, refer to www.seatcheck.org or call 1–866–SEATCHECK. Canadian residents, should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information. http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/safedrivers/childsafety/index.htm

WARNING!

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **A rearward-facing child restraint should only be used in a rear seat, or in the front seat if the passenger's front airbag is Off (if equipped). If the airbag is left On, a rearward-facing child restraint in the front seat may be struck by a deploying passenger airbag (if equipped) which may cause severe or fatal injury to the infant.**

Here are some tips for getting the most out of your child restraint:

- Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. We also recommend that you make sure that you can install the child restraint in the vehicle where you will use it before you buy it.

- The restraint must be appropriate for your child's weight and height. Check the label on the restraint for weight and height limits.
- Carefully follow the instructions that come with the restraint. If you install the restraint improperly, it may not work when you need it.
- The passenger seat belts are equipped with Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR), which are designed to keep the lap portion tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip.

  Pull the belt from the retractor until there is enough to allow you to pass through the child restraint and slide the latch plate into the buckle. Then pull on the belt until it is completely extended from the retractor. Allow the belt to return to the retractor, pulling on the excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint. Refer to "Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) Mode" in this section.
- In the rear seat, you may have trouble tightening the lap/shoulder belt on the child restraint because the buckle or latch plate is too close to the belt path opening on the restraint. Disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt several times to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out.
- If the belt still can't be tightened, or if pulling and pushing on the restraint loosens the belt, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the latch plate around, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still can't make the child restraint secure, try a different seating position.

- Buckle the child into the seat according to the child restraint manufacturer's directions.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or collision, it could strike the occupants or seat backs and cause serious personal injury.

WARNING!

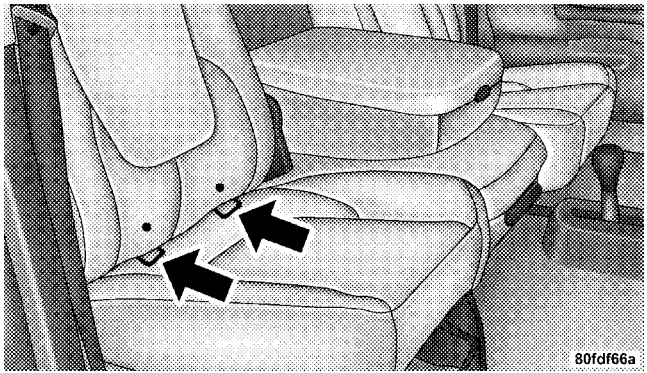
Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren (LATCH)

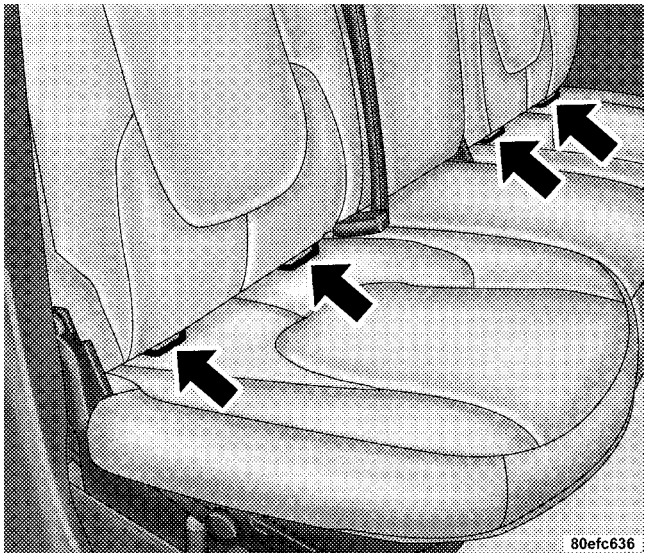
Each vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren. LATCH child restraint anchorage systems are installed in the Regular Cab passenger seat position and the Quad Cab® rear seat outboard positions. LATCH equipped seating positions feature both lower anchor bars, located at the back of the seat cushion, and tether strap anchorages, located behind the seat back (refer to "Child Restraint Tether Anchor" in this section).

Identification dots are located above the Regular Cab front seat lower anchorages as a guide for locating lower anchors.

NOTE: For children riding in the front seat of a Regular Cab model, refer to the "Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (if equipped)" in this section.



Regular Cab Passenger Seat



Quad Cab® Rear Outboard Seats

Child restraint systems having attachments designed to connect to the lower anchorages are now available. Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to the seat back tether anchorage have been available for some time. In fact, many child restraint manufacturers will provide add-on tether strap kits for some of their older products.

Because the lower anchorages are to be introduced to passenger carrying vehicles over a period of years, child restraint systems having attachments for those anchorages will continue to have features for installation in vehicles using the lap or lap/shoulder belt. They will also have tether straps, and you are urged to take advantage of all of the available attachments provided with your child restraint in any vehicle.

NOTE: When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, please ensure that all seat belts not being used for occupant restraints are stowed and out of reach of children. It is recommended that before installing the child restraint, buckle the seat belt so the seat belt is tucked behind the child restraint and out of reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of tucking the seat belt behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. This should stow the seat belt out of the reach of an inquisitive child. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and should not be played with, and never leave your child unattended in the vehicle.

NOTE: If your child restraint seat is not LATCH-compatible, install the restraint using the vehicle seat belting.

Installing the Child Restraint System

WARNING!

Do not install child restraint systems equipped with LATCH attachments in the center position of a Quad Cab® model rear seat. The LATCH anchorages in this seat are designed for the two outboard seating positions only. A child may be placed in the rear center seating position of a Quad Cab® model using the seat belt and child tether anchorage. Failure to follow this may result in serious or fatal injury.

We urge you to carefully follow the directions of the manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Many, but not all, restraint systems will be equipped with separate straps on each side, with each having a hook or connector, and a means for adjusting the tension in the strap. Forward-facing toddler restraints and some rearward-facing infant restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap, a hook and means for adjusting the tension in the strap.

In general, you will first loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and tether straps so that you can more easily attach the hook or connector to the lower anchorages and tether anchorages. Then tighten all three straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat.

Not all child restraint systems will be installed as we have described here. Again, carefully follow the instructions that come with the child restraint system.

WARNING!

Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

Child Restraint Tether Anchor

Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to tether anchors have been available for some time. In fact, many child restraint manufacturers will provide add-on tether strap kits for their older products. Regular Cab models have two tether anchorages, one each behind the front center and right seats. Quad Cab® models have three anchorages, one behind each of the rear seats.

WARNING!

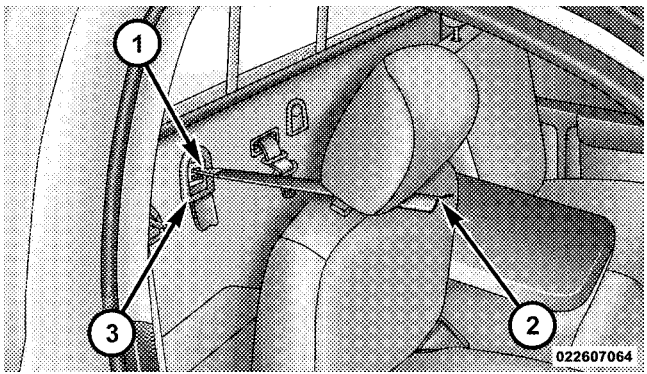
An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to seat failure and injury to the child. In a collision, the seat could come loose and allow the child to crash into the inside of the vehicle or other passengers, or even be thrown from the vehicle. Use only the anchor positions directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap. Follow the instructions below. See your authorized dealer for help if necessary.

Tether Anchorage Points at the Right and Center Front Seat (Regular Cab - All Seats)

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.

2. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal.

3. Install the child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



Regular Cab with Any Bench Seat

1 — Tether Strap Hook
2 — Tether Strap to Child Restraint
3 — Tether Anchor

Multiple Child Restraint Installation Sequence (Quad Cab® - Rear Seats)

1. Obtain tether straps by raising the head restraints and reaching between the rear glass and rear seat. The tether strap may be retained with an elastic band. Accessibility to the tether strap is greatly improved by raising the seat cushion to the "up" position. Remove the elastic before use.

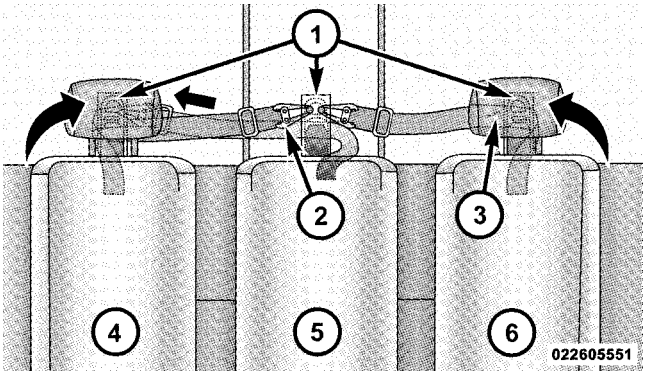
2. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat and then to the anchor directly behind the center rear seat.

3. Pass each tether strap hook under the head restraint and through the loop of webbing behind the child seat.

4. Route each tether strap to the anchor behind the center seat, and attach the hooks to the metal ring.

5. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat and to the anchor directly behind the right seat.

6. Install each child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.



Multiple Child Restraints

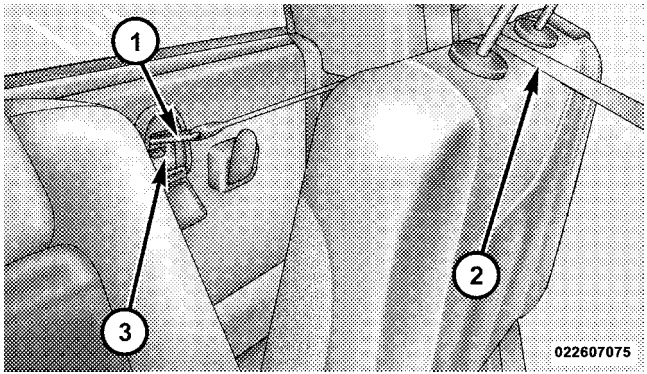
1 — Inner Anchor Strap Ring(s)
2 — Snap Hook
3 — Tether Strap
4 — Passenger's Side Rear Child Seat
5 — Rear Center Child Seat
6 — Driver's Side Rear Child Seat

Tether Anchorage Points at All Three Seating Positions

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.

2. Lift the cover, and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal.

3. Install the child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



Tether Anchor

1 — Tether Strap Hook
2 — Tether Strap to Child Restraint
3 — Tether Anchor

Children Too Large for Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seat back should use the lap/shoulder belt in a rear seat.

- Make sure that the child is upright in the seat.
- The lap portion should be low on the hips and as snug as possible.
- Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position.

If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle. Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back.

Transporting Pets

Airbags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision. Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS

The Cummins® turbocharged diesel engine does not require a break-in period due to its construction. Normal operation is allowed, providing the following recommendations are followed:

NOTE: Light duty operation such as light trailer towing or no load operation will extend the time before the engine is at full efficiency. Reduced fuel economy and power may be seen at this time.

For additional vehicle break-in requirements, refer to "Trailer Towing" in Section 5 of the Owners Manual.

- Warm up the engine before placing it under load.
- Do not operate the engine at idle for prolonged periods.
- Use the appropriate transmission gear to prevent engine lugging.
- Observe vehicle oil pressure and temperature indicators.
- Check the coolant and oil levels frequently.
- Vary throttle position at highway speeds when carrying or towing significant weight.

Because of the construction of the Cummins® turbocharged diesel engine, engine run-in is enhanced by loaded operating conditions which allow the engine parts to achieve final finish and fit during the first 6,000 miles (10 000 km).

SAFETY TIPS

Transporting Passengers

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

WARNING!

- **It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

Exhaust Gas

WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO) follow these safety tips:

Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.

If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

Safety Checks You Should Make Inside the Vehicle

Seat Belts

Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding belt or retractor condition, replace the belt.

Airbag Warning Light

The light should come on and remain on for six to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned ON. If the light is not lit during starting, see your authorized dealer. If the light stays on, flickers, or comes on while driving, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Defroster

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside the Vehicle

Tires

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread. Inspect the tread and sidewall for cuts and cracks. Check the wheel nuts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper pressure.

Lights

Have someone observe the operation of exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Door Latches

Check for positive closing, latching, and locking.

Fluid Leaks

Check area under vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, engine coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, power steering fluid, or brake fluid leaks are suspected, the cause should be located and corrected immediately.

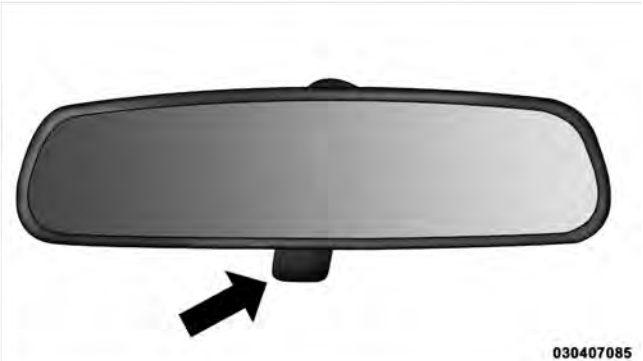
UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

MIRRORS

Inside Day/Night Mirror

Headlight glare can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward the rear of the vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward the windshield). The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.



Adjusting Rearview Mirror

Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you. You can turn the feature on or off by pressing the button at the base of the mirror. A light next to the button will illuminate to indicate when the dimming feature is activated.

Automatic Dimming Mirror

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

Outside Mirrors

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirror(s) to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.

WARNING!

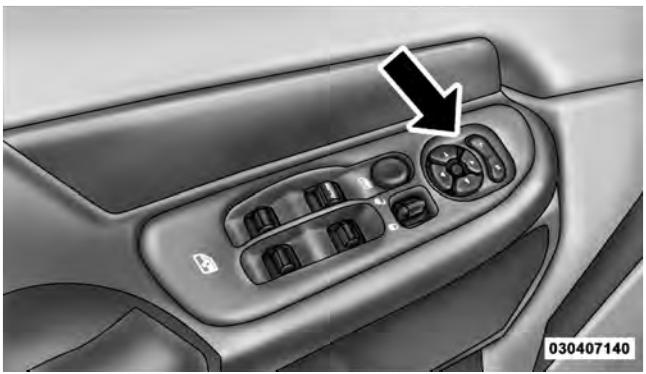
Vehicles and other objects seen in a passenger side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your passenger side convex mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the passenger side convex mirror. Some vehicles will not have a convex passenger side mirror.

Outside Mirrors Folding Feature

All 6 x 9 in exterior mirrors are hinged and may be moved either forward or rearward to resist damage. The hinges have three detent positions: full forward, full rearward and normal.

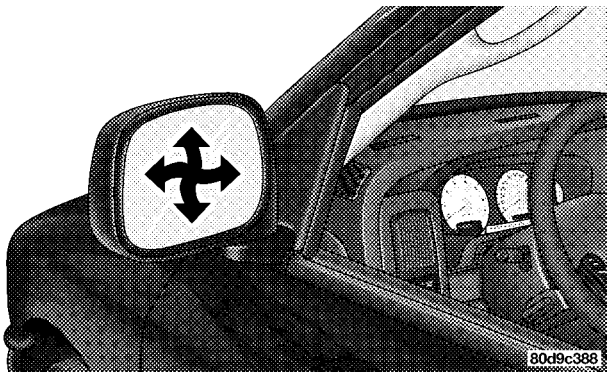
Power Mirrors — If Equipped

The controls for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door trim panel.



Power Mirror Switches

Select the left or right mirror using the top switch, then press one of the four arrows on the bottom switch to adjust the mirror. Once the mirror is adjusted, set the top switch to the center (off) position to prevent accidentally moving a mirror.



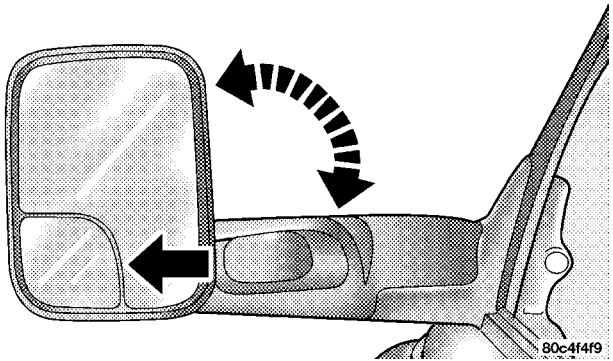
Power Mirror Movement

Heated Mirrors — If Equipped

The heated mirror button is located on the climate control panel. Press this button to turn on the heated mirrors (if equipped). An indicator in the button will illuminate when the heated mirror is on. The heated mirror automatically turns off after approximately 10 minutes. For an additional five minutes of operation, press the button a second time.

Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped

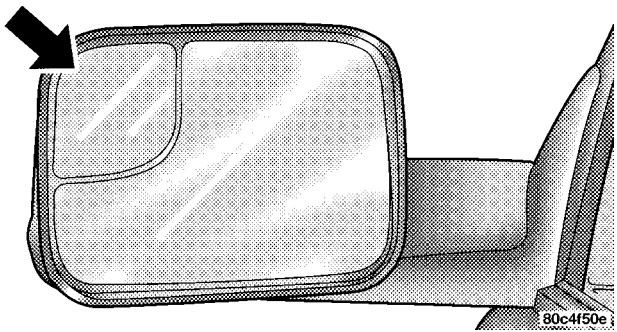
These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped in or out).



Trailer Towing Position

NOTE: Fold the trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.

A small blindspot mirror is integrated onto the main mirror surface.



Blindspot Mirror

uconnect™ phone — IF EQUIPPED

uconnect™ phone is a voice-activated, hands-free, in-vehicle communications system. uconnect™ phone allows you to dial a phone number with your cellular phone using simple voice commands (e.g., ″Call″ ... ″Mike″ ...″Work″ or ″Dial″ ... ″248-555-1212″). Your cellular

phone's audio is transmitted through your vehicle's audio system; the system will automatically mute your radio when using the uconnect™ phone.

NOTE: The uconnect™ phone requires a cellular phone equipped with the Bluetooth® "Hands-Free Profile," Version 0.96 or higher. See the uconnect™ website for supported phones.

For uconnect™ customer support, visit the following websites:

- www.chrysler.com/uconnect
- www.dodge.com/uconnect
- www.jeep.com/uconnect
- or call 1–877–855–8400

uconnect™ phone allows you to transfer calls between the system and your cellular phone as you enter or exit your vehicle and enables you to mute the system's microphone for private conversation.

The uconnect™ phone is driven through your Bluetooth® "Hands-Free Profile" cellular phone. uconnect™ features Bluetooth® technology - the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other without wires or a docking station, so uconnect™ phone works no matter where you stow your cellular phone (be it your purse, pocket, or briefcase), as long as your phone is turned on and has been paired to the vehicle's uconnect™ phone. The uconnect™ phone allows up to seven cellular phones to be linked to the system. Only one linked (or paired) cellular phone can be used with the system at a time. The system is available in English, Spanish, or French languages.

WARNING!

Any voice commanded system should be used only in safe driving conditions following local laws and phone use. All attention should be kept on the roadway ahead. Failure to do so may result in an accident causing serious injury or death.

Phone Button

Depending on the vehicle options, either the radio or the mirror will contain the two control buttons (phone button) and (voice recognition button) that will enable you to access the system.

Voice Recognition Button

Actual button location may vary with the radio. The individual buttons are described in the "Operation" section.

The uconnect™ phone can be used with any Hands-Free Profile certified Bluetooth® cellular phone. See the uconnect™ website for supported phones. If your cellular phone supports a different profile (e.g., Headset Profile) you may not be able to use any uconnect™ phone features. Refer to your cellular service provider or the phone manufacturer for details.

The uconnect™ phone is fully integrated with the vehicle's audio system. The volume of the uconnect™ phone can be adjusted either from the radio volume control knob or from the steering wheel radio control (right switch), if so equipped.

The radio display will be used for visual prompts from the uconnect™ phone such as "CELL" or caller ID on certain radios.

Operation

Voice commands can be used to operate the uconnect™ phone and to navigate through the uconnect™ phone

menu structure. Voice commands are required after most uconnect™ phone prompts. You will be prompted for a specific command and then guided through the available options.

- Prior to giving a voice command, one must wait for the beep, which follows the "Ready" prompt or another prompt.
- For certain operations, compound commands can be used. For example, instead of saying "Setup" and then "Phone Pairing," the following compound command can be said: "Setup Phone Pairing."
- For each feature explanation in this section, only the combined form of the voice command is given. You can also break the commands into parts and say each part of the command when you are asked for it. For example, you can use the combined form voice command "Phonebook New Entry," or you can break the combined form command into two voice commands: "Phonebook" and "New Entry." Please remember, the uconnect™ phone works best when you talk in a normal conversational tone, as if speaking to someone sitting a few feet/meters away from you.

Voice Command Tree

Refer to "Voice Tree" in this section.

Help Command

If you need assistance at any prompt, or if you want to know your options at any prompt, say "Help" following the beep. The uconnect™ phone will play all the options at any prompt if you ask for help.

To activate the uconnect™ phone from idle, simply press the button and follow the audible prompts for directions. All uconnect™ phone sessions begin with a press of the button on the radio control head.

Cancel Command
At any prompt, after the beep, you can say "Cancel" and you will be returned to the main menu. However, in a few instances the system will take you back to the previous menu.

Pair (Link) uconnect™ phone to a Cellular Phone
To begin using your uconnect™ phone, you must pair your compatible Bluetooth® enabled cellular phone.

To complete the pairing process, you will need to reference your cellular phone Owner's Manual. The uconnect™ website may also provide detailed instructions for pairing.

The following are general phone to uconnect™ phone pairing instructions:

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- When prompted, after the beep, say "Pair a Phone" and follow the audible prompts.
- You will be asked to say a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN), which you will later need to enter into your cellular phone. You can enter any four-digit PIN. You will not need to remember this PIN after the initial pairing process.
- For identification purposes, you will be prompted to give the uconnect™ phone a name for your cellular phone. Each cellular phone that is paired should be given a unique phone name.
- You will then be asked to give your cellular phone a priority level between one and seven, with one being the highest priority. You can pair up to seven cellular phones to your uconnect™ phone. However, at any given time, only one cellular phone can be in use, connected to your uconnect™ phone. The priority allows the uconnect™ phone to know which cellular

phone to use if multiple cellular phones are in the vehicle at the same time. For example, if priority three and priority five phones are present in the vehicle, the uconnect™ phone will use the priority three cellular phone when you make a call. You can select to use a lower priority cellular phone at any time (refer to "Advanced Phone Connectivity" in this section).

Dial by Saying a Number

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Dial."
- The system will prompt you to say the number you want to call.
- For example, you can say "234-567-8901".
- The uconnect™ phone will confirm the phone number and then dial. The number will appear in the display of certain radios.

Call by Saying a Name

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Call."
- The system will prompt you to say the name of the person you want to call.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say the name of the person you want to call. For example, you can say "John Doe," where John Doe is a previously stored name entry in the uconnect™ phonebook or downloaded phonebook. To learn how to store a name in the phonebook, refer to "Add Names to Your uconnect™ Phonebook," in the phonebook.

- The uconnect™ system will confirm the name and then dial the corresponding phone number, which may appear in the display of certain radios.

Add Names to Your uconnect™ Phonebook

NOTE: Adding names to the uconnect™ phonebook is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook New Entry."
- When prompted, say the name of the new entry. Use of long names helps the voice recognition and it is recommended. For example, say "Robert Smith" or "Robert" instead of "Bob."
- When prompted, enter the number designation (e.g., "Home," "Work," "Mobile," or "Pager"). This will allow you to store multiple numbers for each phonebook entry, if desired.
- When prompted, recite the phone number for the phonebook entry that you are adding.

After you are finished adding an entry into the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to add more phone numbers to the current entry or to return to the main menu.

The uconnect™ phone will allow you to enter up to 32 names in the phonebook with each name having up to four associated phone numbers and designations. Each language has a separate 32-name phonebook accessible only in that language. In addition, if equipped and supported by your phone, uconnect™ phone automatically downloads your cellular phone's phonebook.

Phonebook Download – Automatic Phonebook Transfer From Cellular Phone

If equipped and specifically supported by your phone, uconnect™ phone automatically downloads names (text names) and number entries from the cellular phone's phonebook. Specific Bluetooth® Phones with Phone Book Access Profile may support this feature. See uconnect™ website for supported phones.

- To call a name from downloaded (or uconnect™) Phonebook, follow the procedure in "Call by Saying a Name" section.
- Automatic download and update, if supported, begins as soon as the Bluetooth® wireless phone connection is made to the uconnect™ phone, for example, after you start the vehicle.
- A maximum of 1000 entries per phone will be downloaded and updated every time a phone is connected to the uconnect™ phone.
- Depending on the maximum number of entries downloaded, there may be a short delay before the latest downloaded names can be used. Until then, if available, the previous downloaded phonebook is available for use.
- Only the phonebook of the currently connected cellular phone is accessible.
- Only the cellular phone's phonebook is downloaded. SIM card phonebook is not part of the Mobile phonebook.
- This downloaded phonebook cannot be edited or deleted on the uconnect™ phone. These can only be edited on the cellular phone. The changes are transferred and updated to uconnect™ phone on the next phone connection.

Phonebook Download — Single Entry

If equipped and supported by your phone, uconnect™ phone allows the user to download entries from their phone via Bluetooth®. To use this feature, press the button and say "Phonebook Download." The system prompts, "Ready to accept "V" card entry via Bluetooth®…" The system is now ready to accept phonebook entries from your phone using the Bluetooth® Object Exchange Profile (OBEX). Please see your phone Owner's Manual for specific instructions on how to send these entries from your phone.

NOTE:

- The phone handset must support Bluetooth® OBEX transfers of phonebook entries to use this feature.
- Some phones cannot send phonebook entries if they are already connected to any system via Bluetooth®, and you may see a message on the phone display that the Bluetooth® link is busy. In this case, the user must first disconnect or drop the Bluetooth® connection to the uconnect™ phone, and then send the address book entry via Bluetooth®. Please see your phone Owner's Manual for specific instructions on how to drop the Bluetooth® connection.
- If the phonebook entry is longer than 24 characters, it will only use the first 24 characters.

Edit uconnect™ Phonebook Entries

NOTE:

- Editing names in the phonebook is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.
- Automatic downloaded phonebook entries cannot be deleted or edited.
- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Edit."

- You will then be asked for the name of the phonebook entry that you wish to edit.
- Next, choose the number designation (home, work, cellular, or pager) that you wish to edit.
- When prompted, recite the new phone number for the phonebook entry that you are editing.

After you are finished editing an entry in the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to edit another entry in the phonebook, call the number you just edited, or return to the main menu.

"Phonebook Edit" can be used to add another phone number to a name entry that already exists in the phonebook. For example, the entry John Doe may have a cellular and a home number, but you can add "John Doe's" work number later using the "Phonebook Edit" feature.

Delete uconnect™ Phonebook Entry

NOTE: Editing phonebook entries is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Delete."
- After you enter the Phonebook Delete menu, you will then be asked for the name of the entry that you wish to delete. You can either say the name of a phonebook entry that you wish to delete or you can say "List Names" to hear a list of the entries in the phonebook from which you choose. To select one of the entries from the list, press the  button while the uconnect™ phone is playing the desired entry and say "Delete."

- After you enter the name, the uconnect™ phone will ask you which designation you wish to delete: home, work, cellular, pager, or all. Say the designation you wish to delete.
- Note that only the phonebook entry in the current language is deleted.
- Automatic downloaded phonebook entries cannot be deleted or edited.

Delete/Erase "All" uconnect™ Phonebook Entries

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Erase All."
- The uconnect™ phone will ask you to verify that you wish to delete all the entries from the phonebook.
- After confirmation, the phonebook entries will be deleted.
- Note that only the phonebook in the current language is deleted.
- Automatic downloaded phonebook entries cannot be deleted or edited.

List All Names in the uconnect™ Phonebook

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook List Names."
- The uconnect™ phone will play the names of all the phonebook entries, including the downloaded phonebook entries, if available.
- To call one of the names in the list, press the button during the playing of the desired name, and say "Call."

NOTE: The user can also exercise "Edit" or "Delete" operations at this point.

- The uconnect™ phone will then prompt you as to the number designation you wish to call.
- The selected number will be dialed.

Phone Call Features

The following features can be accessed through the uconnect™ phone if the feature(s) are available on your cellular service plan. For example, if your cellular service plan provides three-way calling, this feature can be accessed through the uconnect™ phone. Check with your cellular service provider for the features that you have.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - No Call Currently in Progress

When you receive a call on your cellular phone, the uconnect™ phone will interrupt the vehicle audio system, if on, and will ask if you would like to answer the call. Press the button to accept the call. To reject the call, press and hold the button until you hear a single beep, indicating that the incoming call was rejected.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - Call Currently in Progress

If a call is currently in progress and you have another incoming call, you will hear the same network tones for call waiting that you normally hear when using your cellular phone. Press the button to place the current call on hold and answer the incoming call.

NOTE: The uconnect™ phone compatible phones in the market today do not support rejecting an incoming call when another call is in progress. Therefore, the user can only answer an incoming call or ignore it.

Making a Second Call While Current Call is in Progress

To make a second call while you are currently on a call, press the button and say "Dial" or "Call" followed by the phone number or phonebook entry you wish to call. The first call will be on hold while the second call is in

progress. To go back to the first call, refer to "Toggling Between Calls" in this section. To combine two calls, refer to "Conference Call" in this section.

Place/Retrieve a Call From Hold

To put a call on hold, press the button until you hear a single beep. This indicates that the call is on hold. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the button until you hear a single beep.

Toggling Between Calls

If two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press the button until you hear a single beep, indicating that the active and hold status of the two calls have switched. Only one call can be placed on hold at a time.

Conference Call

When two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press and hold the button until you hear a double beep indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Three-Way Calling

To initiate three-way calling, press the button while a call is in progress, and make a second phone call, as described under "Making a Second Call While Current Call is in Progress." After the second call has established, press and hold the button until you hear a double beep, indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Call Termination

To end a call in progress, momentarily press the button. Only the active call(s) will be terminated and if there is a call on hold, it will become the new active call. If the active call is terminated by the phone far end, a call on hold may not become active automatically. This is cell phone-dependent. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the button until you hear a single beep.

Redial

- Press the button to begin.

- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Redial."
- The uconnect™ phone will call the last number that was dialed from your cellular phone.

NOTE: This may not be the last number dialed from the uconnect™ phone.

Call Continuation

Call continuation is the progression of a phone call on the uconnect™ phone after the vehicle ignition key has been switched to OFF. Call continuation functionality available on the vehicle can be any one of three types:

- After the ignition key is switched to OFF, a call can continue on the uconnect™ phone either until the call ends, or until the vehicle battery condition dictates cessation of the call on the uconnect™ phone and transfer of the call to the cellular phone.
- After the ignition key is switched to OFF, a call can continue on the uconnect™ phone for a certain duration, after which the call is automatically transferred from the uconnect™ phone to the cellular phone.
- An active call is automatically transferred to the cellular phone after the ignition key is switched to OFF.

uconnect™ phone Features

Language Selection

To change the language that the uconnect™ phone is using:

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say the name of the language you wish to switch to English, Espanol, or Francais.
- Continue to follow the system prompts to complete the language selection.

After selecting one of the languages, all prompts and voice commands will be in that language.

NOTE: After every uconnect™ phone language change operation, only the language-specific 32-name phonebook is usable. The paired phone name is not language-specific and usable across all languages.

Emergency Assistance
If you are in an emergency and the cellular phone is reachable:

- Pick up the phone and manually dial the emergency number for your area.

If the phone is not reachable and the uconnect™ phone is operational, you may reach the emergency number as follows:

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Emergency" and the uconnect™ phone will instruct the paired cellular phone to call the emergency number. This feature is supported in the U.S., Canada, and Mexico.

NOTE:
- The emergency number dialed is based on the country where the vehicle is purchased (911 for the U.S. and Canada and 060 for Mexico). The number dialed may not be applicable with the available cellular service and area.
- If supported, this number may be programmable on some systems. To do this, press the button and say 'Setup', followed by 'Emergency'.
- The uconnect™ phone does slightly lower your chances of successfully making a phone call as to that for the cellular phone directly.

WARNING!

Your phone must be turned on and paired to the uconnect™ phone to allow use of this vehicle feature in emergency situations, when the cellular phone has network coverage and stays paired to the uconnect™ phone.

Towing Assistance
If you need towing assistance:

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Towing Assistance."

NOTE:
- The towing assistance number dialed is based on the country where the vehicle is purchased (1-800-528-2069 for the U.S., 1-877-213-4525 for Canada, 55-14-3454 for Mexico City and 1-800-712-3040 for outside Mexico City in Mexico). Please refer to the 24-Hour "Towing Assistance" coverage details on the DVD in the Warranty Information Booklet and the 24-Hour Towing Assistance references.
- If supported, this number may be programmable on some systems. To do this, press the button and say "Setup", followed by "Towing Assistance".

Paging
To learn how to page, refer to "Working with Automated Systems." Paging works properly except for pagers of certain companies, which time out a little too soon to work properly with the uconnect™ phone.

Voice Mail Calling
To learn how to access your voice mail, refer to "Working with Automated Systems."

Working with Automated Systems

This method is used in instances where one generally has to press numbers on the cellular phone keypad while navigating through an automated telephone system.

You can use your uconnect™ phone to access a voice mail system or an automated service, such as a paging service or automated customer service line. Some services require immediate response selection. In some instances, that may be too quick for use of the uconnect™ phone.

When calling a number with your uconnect™ phone that normally requires you to enter in a touch-tone sequence on your cellular phone keypad, you can press the button and say the sequence you wish to enter, followed by the word "Send." For example, if required to enter your PIN followed with a pound, (3 7 4 6 #), you can press the button and say, "3 7 4 6 # Send." Saying a number, or sequence of numbers, followed by "Send," is also to be used for navigating through an automated customer service center menu structure, and to leave a number on a pager.

You can also send stored uconnect™ phonebook entries as tones for fast and easy access to voice mail and pager entries. To use this feature, dial the number you wish to call and then press the button and say, "Send." The system will prompt you to enter the name or number and say the name of the phonebook entry you wish to send. The uconnect™ phone will then send the corresponding phone number associated with the phonebook entry, as tones over the phone.

NOTE:

- You may not hear all of the tones due to cellular phone network configurations. This is normal.
- Some paging and voice mail systems have system time out settings that are too short and may not allow the use of this feature.

Barge In - Overriding Prompts

The "Voice Recognition" button can be used when you wish to skip part of a prompt and issue your voice recognition command immediately. For example, if a prompt is asking "Would you like to pair a phone, clear a...," you could press the button and say, "Pair a Phone" to select that option without having to listen to the rest of the voice prompt.

Turning Confirmation Prompts ON/OFF

Turning confirmation prompts off will stop the system from confirming your choices (e.g., the uconnect™ phone will not repeat a phone number before you dial it).

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Confirmations." The uconnect™ phone will play the current confirmation prompt status and you will be given the choice to change it.

Phone and Network Status Indicators

If available on the radio and/or on a premium display such as the instrument panel cluster, and supported by your cellular phone, the uconnect™ phone will provide notification to inform you of your phone and network status when you are attempting to make a phone call using uconnect™ phone. The status is given for roaming, network signal strength, phone battery strength, etc.

Dialing Using the Cellular Phone Keypad

You can dial a phone number with your cellular phone keypad and still use the uconnect™ phone (while dialing via the cellular phone keypad, the user must exercise caution and take precautionary safety measures). By dialing a number with your paired Bluetooth® cellular phone, the audio will be played through your vehicle's audio system. The uconnect™ phone will work the same as if you dial the number using voice recognition.

NOTE: Certain brands of cellular phones do not send the dial ring to the uconnect™ phone to play it on the vehicle audio system, so you will not hear it. Under this situation, after successfully dialing a number the user may feel that the call did not go through even though the call is in progress. Once your call is answered, you will hear the audio.

Mute/Un-Mute (Mute OFF)
When you mute the uconnect™ phone, you will still be able to hear the conversation coming from the other party, but the other party will not be able to hear you. In order to mute the uconnect™ phone:

- Press the button.
- Following the beep, say "Mute."

In order to un-mute the uconnect™ phone:

- Press the button.
- Following the beep, say "Mute off."

Advanced Phone Connectivity

Transfer Call to and from Cellular Phone
The uconnect™ phone allows ongoing calls to be transferred from your cellular phone to the uconnect™ phone without terminating the call. To transfer an ongoing call from your uconnect™ phone paired cellular phone to the uconnect™ phone or vice versa, press the button and say "Transfer Call."

Connect or Disconnect Link Between the uconnect™ phone and Cellular Phone
Your cellular phone can be paired with many different electronic devices, but can only be actively "connected" with one electronic device at a time.

If you would like to connect or disconnect the Bluetooth® connection between a uconnect™ phone paired cellular phone and the uconnect™ phone, follow the instructions described in your cellular phone User's Manual.

List Paired Cellular Phone Names

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- When prompted, say "List Phones."
- The uconnect™ phone will play the phone names of all paired cellular phones in order from the highest to the lowest priority. To "select" or "delete" a paired phone being announced, press the button and say "Select" or "Delete." Also, see the next two sections for an alternate way to "select" or "delete" a paired phone.

Select Another Cellular Phone

This feature allows you to select and start using another phone paired with the uconnect™ phone.

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Select Phone" and follow the prompts.
- You can also press the button at any time while the list is being played, and then choose the phone that you wish to select.
- The selected phone will be used for the next phone call. If the selected phone is not available, the uconnect™ phone will return to using the highest priority phone present in or near (approximately within 30 ft (9 m)) the vehicle.

Delete uconnect™ phone Paired Cellular Phones

- Press the button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- At the next prompt, say "Delete" and follow the prompts.

- You can also press the button at any time while the list is being played, and then choose the phone you wish to delete.

Things You Should Know About Your uconnect™ phone

uconnect™ phone Tutorial

To hear a brief tutorial of the system features, press the button and say "uconnect™ Tutorial."

Voice Training

For users experiencing difficulty with the system recognizing their voice commands or numbers, the uconnect™ phone Voice Training feature may be used. To enter this training mode, follow one of the two following procedures:

From outside the uconnect™ phone mode (e.g., from radio mode):

- Press and hold the button for five seconds until the session begins, or,
- Press the button and say the "Setup, Voice Training" command.

Repeat the words and phrases when prompted by the uconnect™ phone. For best results, the Voice Training session should be completed when the vehicle is parked with the engine running, all windows closed, and the blower fan switched off.

This procedure may be repeated with a new user. The system will adapt to the last trained voice only.

To restore the Voice Recognition system to factory default settings, enter the Voice Training session via the above procedure and follow the prompts.

Voice Recognition (VR)

- For best performance, adjust the rearview mirror to provide at least ½ in (1 cm) gap between the overhead console (if equipped) and the mirror.

- Always wait for the beep before speaking.
- Speak normally, without pausing, just as you would speak to a person sitting a few feet/meters away from you.
- Make sure that no one other than you is speaking during a voice recognition period.
- Performance is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,
  - fully closed windows,
  - dry weather condition.
- Even though the system is designed for users speaking in North American English, French, and Spanish accents, the system may not always work for some.
- When navigating through an automated system such as voice mail, or when sending a page, at the end of speaking the digit string, make sure to say "Send."
- Storing names in the phonebook when the vehicle is not in motion is recommended.
- It is not recommended to store similar sounding names in the uconnect™ phonebook.
- Phonebook (Downloaded and uconnect™ phone Local) name recognition rate is optimized when the entries are not similar.
- Numbers must be spoken in single digits. "800" must be spoken "eight-zero-zero" not "eight hundred".
- You can say "O" (letter "O") for "0" (zero).

- Even though international dialing for most number combinations is supported, some shortcut dialing number combinations may not be supported.
- In a convertible vehicle, system performance may be compromised with the convertible top down.

Phone Far End Audio Performance

- Audio quality is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,
  - fully closed windows,
  - dry weather conditions, and
  - operation from the driver's seat.
- Performance, such as audio clarity, echo, and loudness to a large degree rely on the phone and network, and not the uconnect™ phone.
- Echo at the phone far end can sometimes be reduced by lowering the in-vehicle audio volume.
- In a convertible vehicle, system performance may be compromised with the convertible top down.

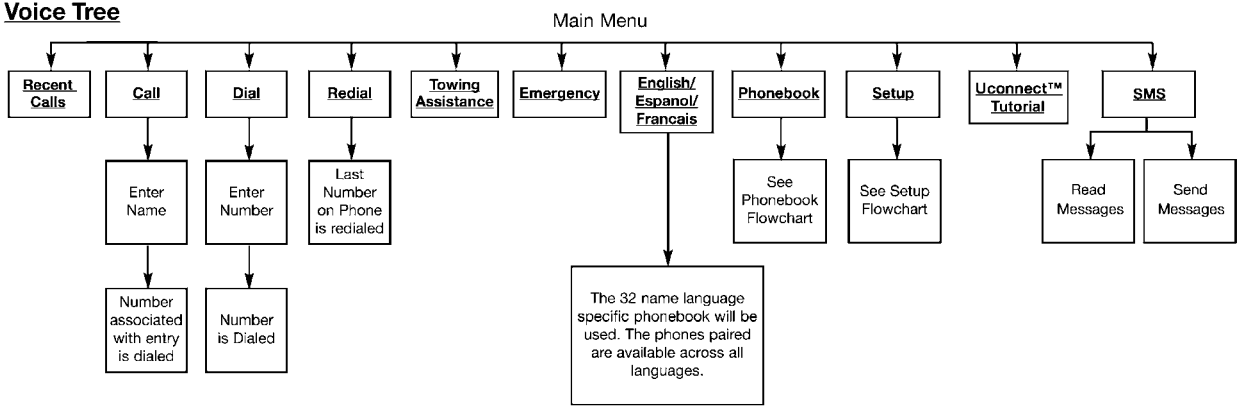
Bluetooth® Communication Link

Cellular phones have been found to lose connection to the uconnect™ phone. When this happens, the connection can generally be reestablished by switching the phone off/on. Your cellular phone is recommended to remain in Bluetooth® ON mode.

Power-Up

After switching the ignition key from OFF to either the ON or ACC position, or after a language change, you must wait at least five seconds prior to using the system.

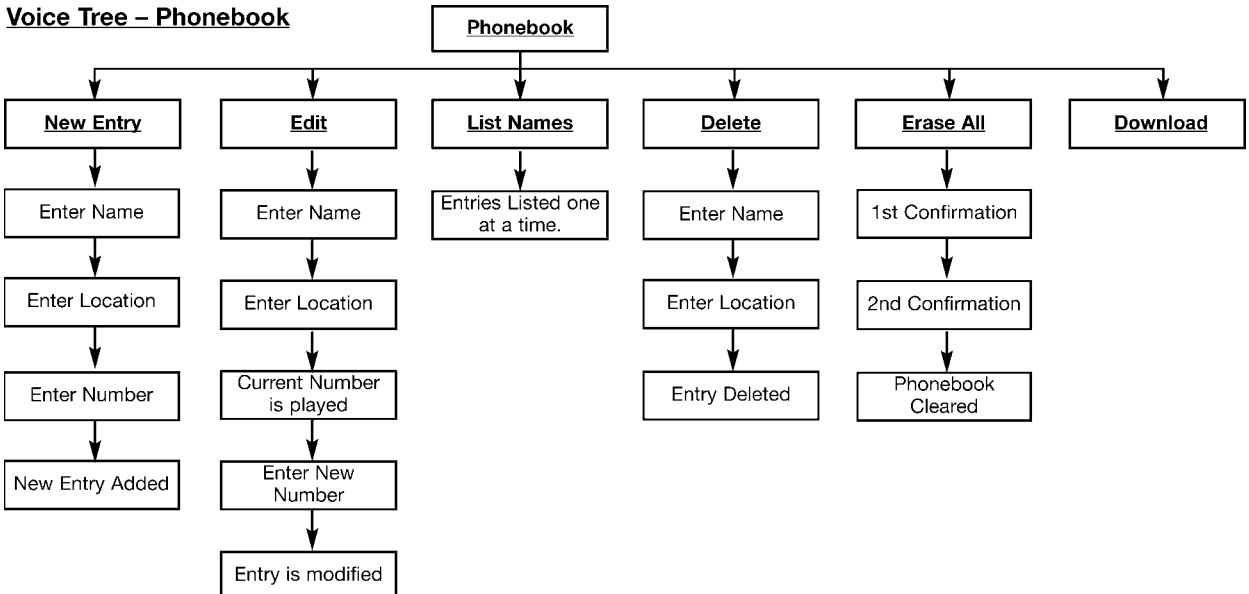
Voice Tree



Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.**

030607515

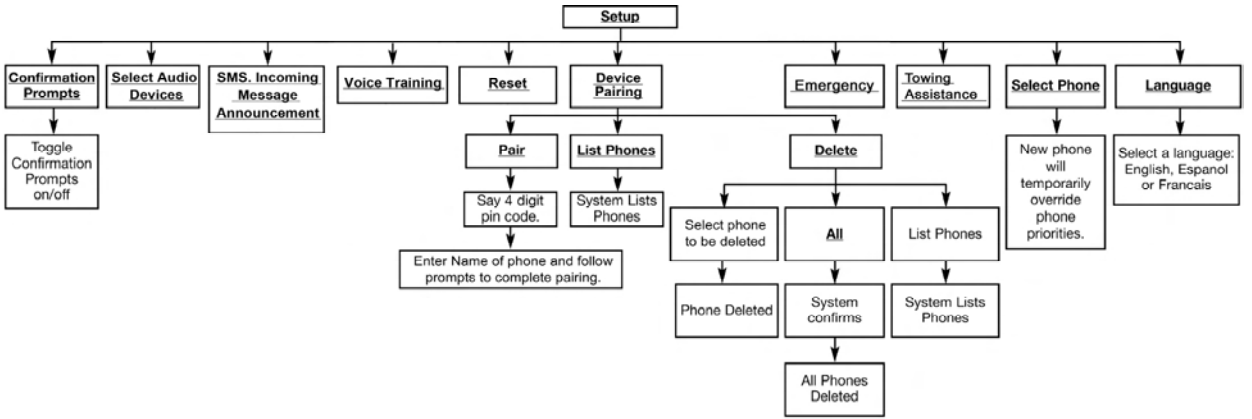
Voice Tree – Phonebook



Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.**

81c6bf80

Voice Tree – Setup



Note: Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined. 030605540

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
zero	
one	
two	
three	
four	
five	
six	
seven	
eight	
nine	
star (*)	
plus (+)	
pound (#)	
add location	
all	

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
call	
cancel	
confirmation prompts	
continue	
delete	
dial	
download	
edit	
emergency	
English	
erase all	
Espanol	
Francais	
help	
home	

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
language	
list names	
list phones	
mobile	
mute	
mute off	
new entry	
no	
pager	
pair a phone	
phone pairing	pairing
phonebook	phone book
previous	
record again	
redial	

Voice Commands	
Primary	Alternate(s)
return to main menu	return or main menu
select phone	select
send	
set up	phone settings or phone set up
towing assistance	
transfer call	
uconnect™ Tutorial	
try again	
voice training	
work	
yes	

General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

VOICE RECOGNITION (VR) SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

Voice Recognition (VR) System Operation

This Voice Recognition system allows you to control your AM, FM radio, satellite radio, disc player, and a memo recorder.

NOTE: Take care to speak into the Voice Interface System as calmly and normally as possible. The ability of the Voice Interface System to recognize user voice commands may be negatively affected by rapid speaking or a raised voice level.

WARNING!

Any voice commanded system should be used only in safe driving conditions following local laws and phone use. All attention should be kept on the roadway ahead. Failure to do so may result in an accident causing serious injury or death.

When you press the button, you will hear a beep. The beep is your signal to give a command.

NOTE: If you do not say a command within a few seconds, the system will present you with a list of options.

If you ever wish to interrupt the system while it lists options, press the button, listen for the beep, and say your command.

Pressing the button while the system is speaking is known as "barging in." The system will be interrupted, and after the beep, you can add or change commands. This will become helpful once you start to learn the options.

NOTE: At any time, you can say the words "Cancel", "Help" or "Main Menu".

These commands are universal and can be used from any menu. All other commands can be used depending upon the active application.

For example, if you are in the disc menu and you are listening to FM radio, you can speak commands from the disc menu or from the FM radio menu.

When using this system, you should speak clearly and at a normal speaking volume.

The system will best recognize your speech if the windows are closed, and the heater/air conditioning fan is set to low.

At any point, if the system does not recognize one of your commands, you will be prompted to repeat it.

To hear the first available Menu, press the button and say "Help" or "Main Menu".

Commands

The Voice Recognition (VR) system understands two types of commands. Universal commands are available at all times. Local commands are available if the supported radio mode is active.

Changing the Volume

1. Start a dialogue by pressing the button.
2. Say a command (e.g., "Help").
3. Use the ON/OFF VOLUME rotary knob to adjust the volume to a comfortable level while the Voice Recognition (VR) system is speaking. Please note the volume setting for VR is different than the audio system.

Main Menu

Start a dialogue by pressing the button. You may say "Main Menu" to switch to the main menu.

In this mode, you can say the following commands:

- "Radio" (to switch to the radio mode)
- "Disc" (to switch to the disc mode)
- "Memo" (to switch to the memo recorder)
- "System Setup" (to switch to system setup)

Radio AM (or Radio Long Wave or Radio Medium Wave — If Equipped)

To switch to the AM band, say "AM" or "Radio AM". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "Frequency" (to change the frequency)
- "Next Station" (to select the next station)
- "Previous Station" (to select the previous station)

- “Radio Menu” (to switch to the radio menu)
- “Main Menu” (to switch to the main menu)

Radio FM

To switch to the FM band, say “FM” or “Radio FM”. In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- “Frequency” (to change the frequency)
- “Next Station” (to select the next station)
- “Previous Station” (to select the previous station)
- “Radio Menu” (to switch to the radio menu)
- “Main Menu” (to switch to the main menu)

Satellite Radio

To switch to satellite radio mode, say “Sat” or “Satellite Radio”. In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- “Channel Number” (to change the channel by its spoken number)
- “Next Channel” (to select the next channel)
- “Previous Channel” (to select the previous channel)
- “List Channel” (to hear a list of available channels)
- “Select Name” (to say the name of a channel)
- “Radio Menu” (to switch to the radio menu)
- “Main Menu” (to switch to the main menu)

Disc
To switch to the disc mode, say "Disc". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "Track" (#) (to change the track)
- "Next Track" (to play the next track)
- "Previous Track" (to play the previous track)
- "Main Menu" (to switch to the main menu)

Memo
To switch to the voice recorder mode, say "Memo". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "New Memo" (to record a new memo) — During the recording, you may press the button to stop recording. You proceed by saying one of the following commands:
  - "Save" (to save the memo)
  - "Continue" (to continue recording)
  - "Delete" (to delete the recording)
- "Play Memos" (to play previously recorded memos) — During the playback you may press the button to stop playing memos. You proceed by saying one of the following commands:
  - "Repeat" (to repeat a memo)
  - "Next" (to play the next memo)
  - "Previous" (to play the previous memo)
  - "Delete" (to delete a memo)
- "Delete All" (to delete all memos)

System Setup
To switch to system setup, say "Setup". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "Language German"

- "Language Dutch"
- "Language Italian"
- "Language English"
- "Language French"
- "Language Spanish"
- "Tutorial"
- "Voice Training"

NOTE: Keep in mind that you have to press the button first and wait for the beep before speaking the "Barge In" commands.

Voice Training

For users experiencing difficulty with the system recognizing their voice commands or numbers the uconnect™ voice "Voice Training" feature may be used.

1. Press the button, say "System Setup" and once you are in that menu then say "Voice Training." This will train your own voice to the system and will improve recognition.

2. Repeat the words and phrases when prompted by uconnect™ voice. For best results, the "Voice Training" session should be completed when the vehicle is parked, engine running, all windows closed, and the blower fan switched off. This procedure may be repeated with a new user. The system will adapt to the last trained voice only.

SEATS

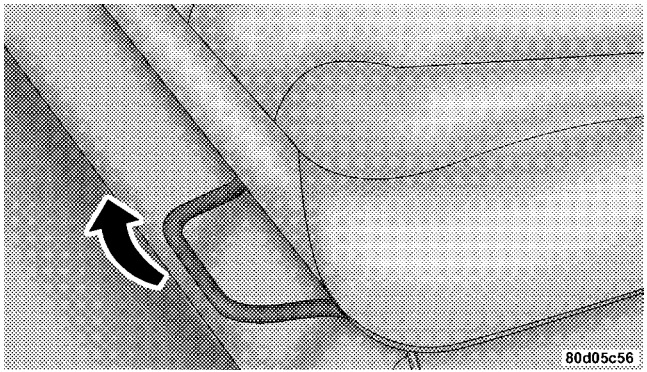
Seats are also a primary part of the Occupant Restraint System of the vehicle. They need to be used properly for safe operation of the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

Manual Seat Adjuster — If Equipped

The front seats are adjustable, forward or rearward. The adjustment handle is located at the front edge of each seat cushion. Pull upward on the handle and slide the seat, forward or rearward, to the desired position. Then, using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to be sure the seat is locked into position.



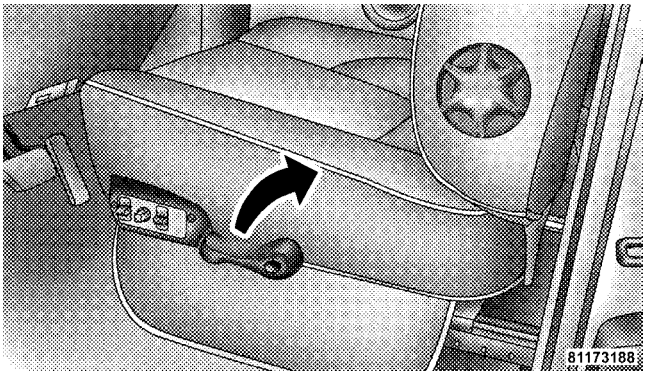
Manual Seat Adjuster

WARNING!

Adjusting a seat while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. The sudden movement of the seat could cause you to lose control. The seat belt might not be properly adjusted and you could be injured. Only adjust a seat while the vehicle is parked.

Reclining Seats

The recliner handle is on the outside of the seat cushion. Pull up on the handle to release the seatback and adjust for comfort.



Seat Recliner Handle

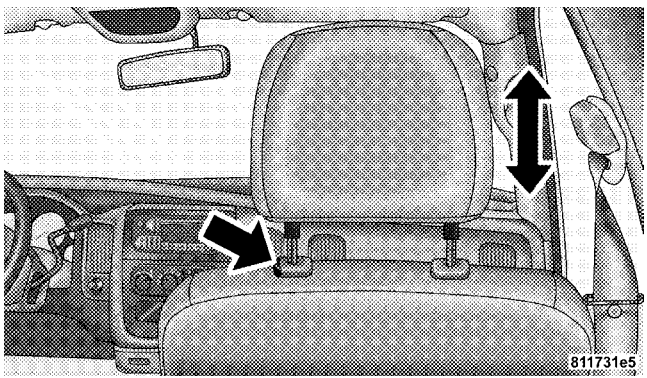
WARNING!

You can be seriously, even fatally, injured riding in a seat with the seatback reclined. Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. If you ride in this position, the shoulder harness will no longer be restraining you. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt and receive serious or fatal injuries. Recline in a seat only when the vehicle is parked.

Adjustable Head Restraints

Head restraints can reduce the risk of injury in the event of a rear impact. The head restraint should be adjusted so the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

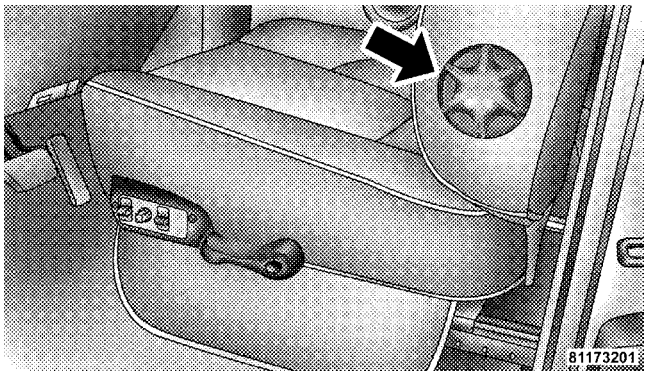
To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, press the large button, located on the base of the head restraint, and push downward on the head restraint.



Head Restraints

Manual Rotary Lumbar Support Adjustment — If Equipped

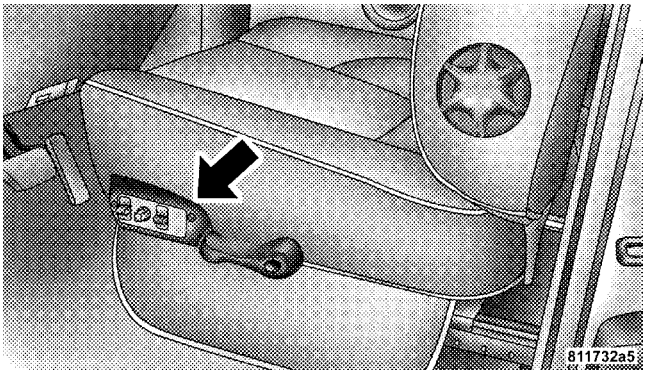
Rotating the lumbar control knob on the left-side of the driver's seatback and on the right side of the passenger's seatback increases or decreases the lumbar (lower back) support.



Manual Lumbar Adjustment

Power Seats — If Equipped

The power seat controls are on the outboard side of the front seat cushions. Three switches control the seat movement.

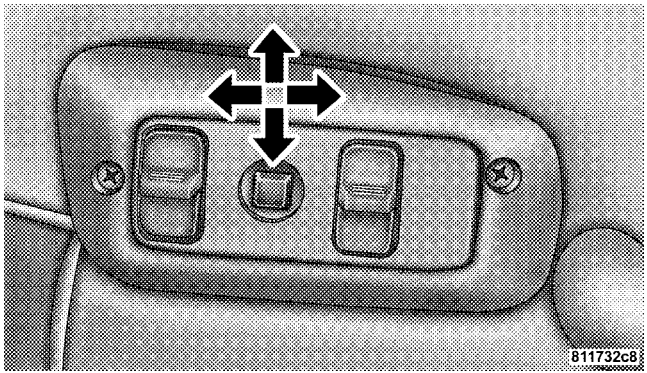


Power Seat Switch

CAUTION!

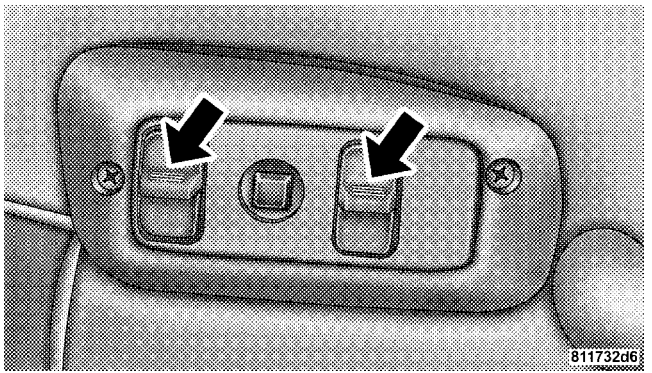
DO NOT place any article under a power seat or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the seat controls. Seat travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the seat's path.

The four-way switch is used to move the seat cushion forward or backward, or to adjust the seat height up or down.



Power Seat Movement

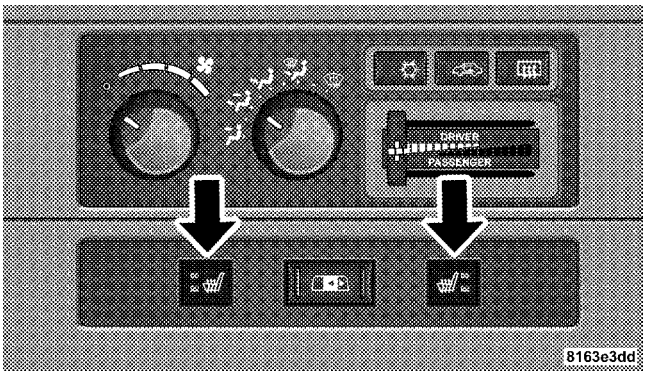
The angle, or tilting, of the seat cushion can be adjusted using the two toggle switches. Use the forward switch to raise or lower the front seat cushion. Use the rear switch to raise or lower the rear of the seat cushion.



Tilt Adjustment

Heated Seats — If Equipped

The heated seat switches are located on the instrument panel under the climate controls.



Heated Seat Switches

After turning the ignition ON, you can choose from High, Low, or Off heat settings. Amber indicator lights in each

switch indicate the level of heat in use. Two indicator lights will illuminate for High, one for Low, and none for Off.

Press the switch once to select High-level heating. Press the switch a second time to select Low-level heating. Press the switch a third time to shut the heating elements Off.

WARNING!

- **Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.**

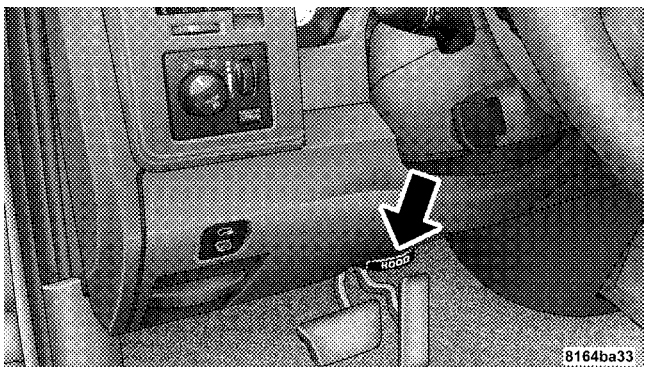
CAUTION!

Repeated overheating of the seat could damage the heating element and/or degrade the material of the seat.

TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD

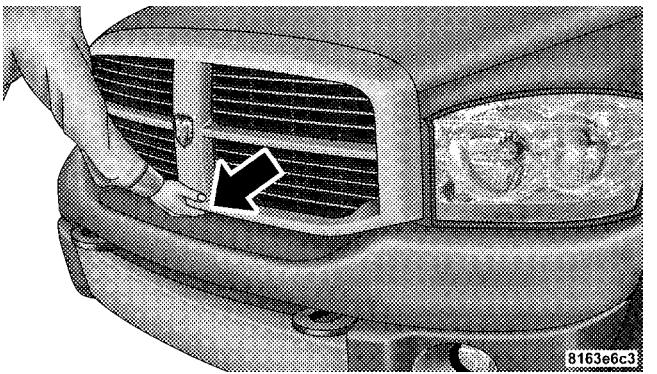
To open the hood, two latches must be released.

1. Pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel.



Hood Release Lever

2. Reach into the opening beneath the center of the grille and push upward on the safety latch to release it before raising the hood.



Safety Latch

CAUTION!

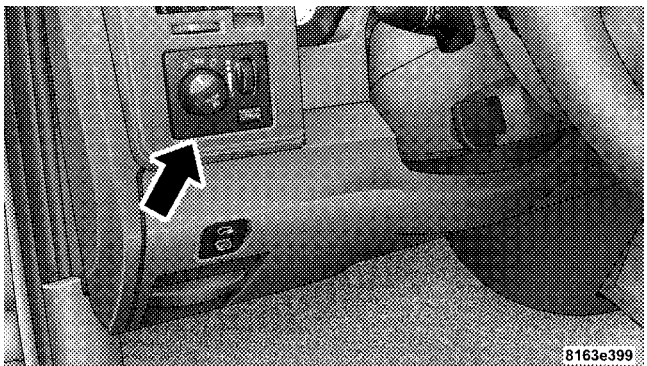
To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.

WARNING!

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

LIGHTS

The headlight switch is located on the left side of the instrument panel next to the steering wheel.

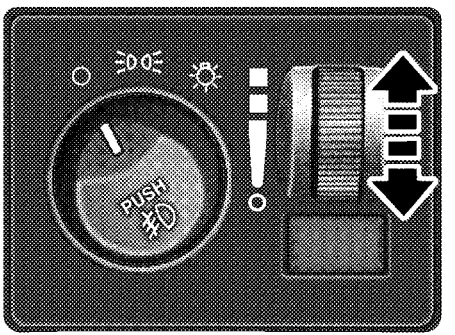


Headlight Switch Location

Interior Lights

Courtesy and dome lights are turned on when the front doors are opened, when the dimmer control (rotating wheel on the right side of the switch) is rotated to the upward detent position, or if equipped, when the UNLOCK button is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. When a door is open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer control all the way down to the OFF detent will cause all the interior lights to go out. This is also known as the "Party" mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

The brightness of the instrument panel lighting can be regulated by rotating the dimmer control up (brighter) or down (dimmer). When the headlights are on you can supplement the brightness of the odometer, trip odometer, radio and overhead console by rotating the control up until you hear a click. This feature is termed the "Parade" mode and is useful when headlights are required during the day.



819484f4

Dimmer Control

NOTE: Quad Cab® models may have an optional switched dome lamp that may be operated by pressing the lens.

Battery Saver

To protect the life of your vehicle's battery, load shedding is provided for both the interior and exterior lights.

If the ignition is OFF and any door is left ajar for 10 minutes or the dimmer control is rotated upwards for 10 minutes, the interior lights will automatically turn off.

If the headlights remain on while the ignition is cycled OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off after eight minutes.

NOTE: Battery saver mode is cancelled if the ignition is ON.

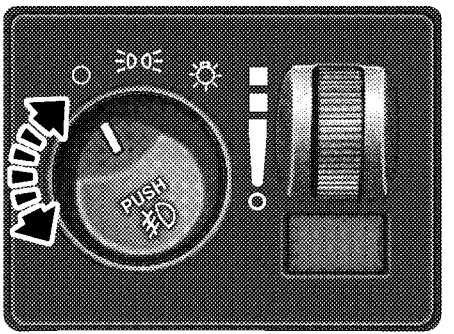
Headlight Delay

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlight delay that will leave the headlights on for 90 seconds. This delay is initiated when the ignition is turned OFF while the headlight switch is on, and then the headlight switch is cycled off. Headlight delay can be cancelled by either turning the headlight switch on then off, or by turning the ignition ON.

The headlight delay time is programmable on vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC). For details, refer to "Personal Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)" under "Overhead Console with Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) – If Equipped" in this Section.

Headlights, Parking Lights and Panel Lights

When the headlight switch is rotated to the first position, the parking lights, tail lights, side marker lights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are all turned on. The headlights will turn on when the switch is rotated to the second position.



81948502

Light Switch Rotation

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.

Daytime Running Lights — If Equipped

The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started and the transmission is in any gear except PARK. This provides a constant "lights on" condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than 50% of normal intensity. If the parking

brake is applied the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) will turn OFF. Also, if a turn signal is activated, the DRL lamp on the same side of the vehicle will turn off for the duration of the turn signal activation. Once the turn signal is no longer active, the DRL lamp will illuminate.

Lights-on Reminder

If the headlights, parking lights, or cargo lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

Fog Lights — If Equipped

The fog lights are turned on by placing the headlight rotary control in the parking light or headlight position and pushing in the headlight rotary control. The fog lights will operate only when the parking lights are on or when the vehicle headlights are on low beam. An indicator light located in the instrument cluster will illuminate when the fog lights are on. The fog lights will turn off when the switch is pushed a second time, when the headlight switch is rotated to the off position, or the high beam is selected.

Multifunction Lever

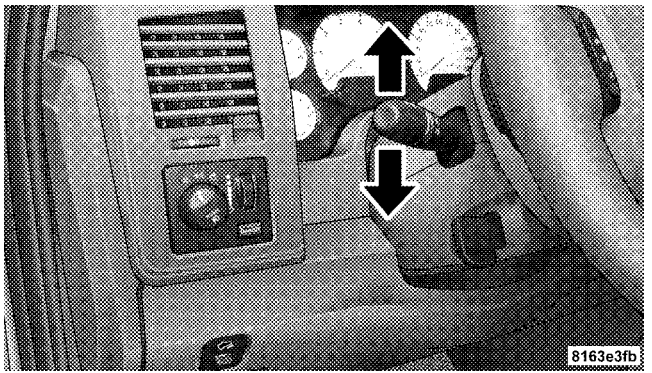
The multifunction lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

Turn Signals

Move the lever up or down to signal a right-hand or left-hand turn.

The arrow on either side of the instrument cluster flashes to indicate the direction of the turn, and proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights. If a defective bulb or wiring circuit is detected for the turn signal system, the arrow indicators will flash at a faster rate. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the switch or indicator lamp is defective.

You can signal a lane change by moving the lever partially up or down.



Turn Signal Lever

Lane Change Assist

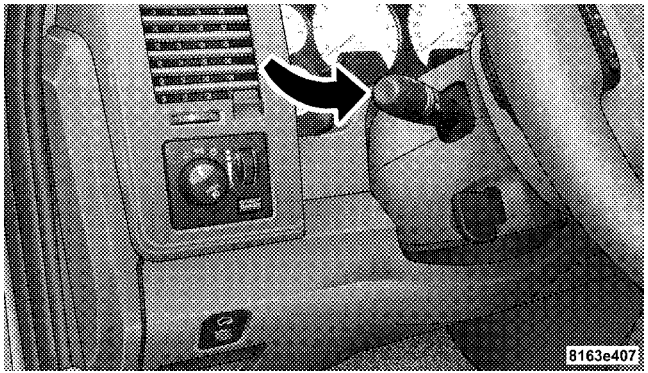
Tap the lever up or down once and the turn signal (left or right) will flash three times then automatically turn off.

Flash-to-Pass

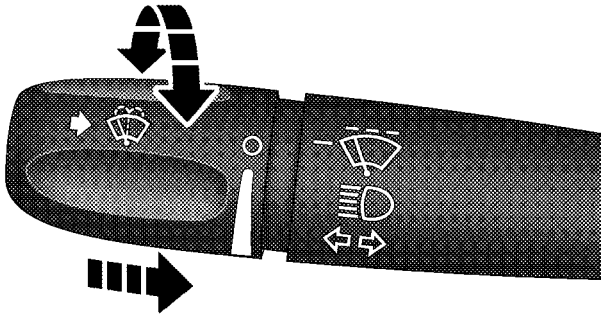
You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by partially pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel. This will turn on the high beam headlights until the lever is released.

High/Low Beam Switch

Pull the multifunction lever fully toward the steering wheel to switch the headlights from high or low beam.



High Beam/Low Beam



Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch

WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction lever. Turn the end of the handle to select the desired wiper speed.

Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob into the upper end of the delay range.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the low continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 15 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every two seconds. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

Windshield Washers

To use the washer, push in on the washer knob on the end of the multifunction lever and hold while spray is desired. If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed for a period greater than one second while in the off position, the wiper will cycle approximately three times after the wash knob is released.

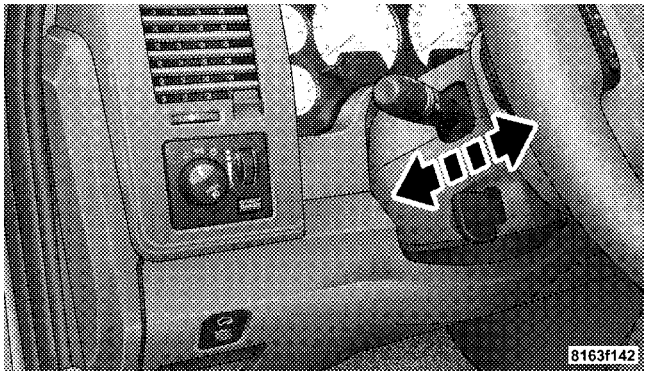
WARNING!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to an accident. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.

TILT STEERING COLUMN

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. The tilt control lever is located on the left-side of the steering column, just below the multifunction lever.

Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to unlock the steering column. Move the steering column up or down as desired, and push the lever toward the instrument panel to lock the column firmly in place.



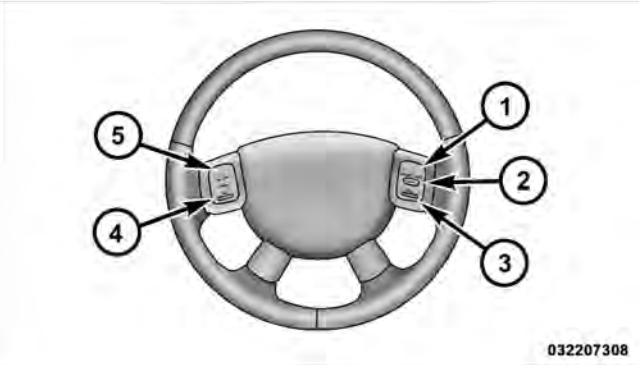
Tilt Steering Control Lever

WARNING!

Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Be sure the steering column is locked before driving your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.

ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED

When engaged, Electronic Speed Control takes over accelerator operation at speeds greater than 25 mph (40 km/h). The controls are mounted on the steering wheel.



Electronic Speed Control Buttons

1 — Resume
2 — Cancel
3 — Decel
4 — Set
5 — On/Off

NOTE: In order to ensure proper operation, the Electronic Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple Speed Control functions are operated simultaneously. If this occurs, the Electronic Speed Control System can be reactivated by pushing the Electronic Speed Control ON/OFF button and resetting the desired vehicle set speed.

To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button to the ON position. An indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system is on.

To Set a Desired Speed

When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press and release the SET button. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, normal braking, clutch pressure while slowing the vehicle, or pressing the CANCEL button will deactivate the Electronic Speed Control without erasing the memory. Pushing the ON/OFF button to the OFF position or turning off the ignition erases the memory.

WARNING!

Leaving the Electronic Speed Control on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system to cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system off when you are not using it.

To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push and release the RESUME button. Resume can be used at any speed above 30 mph (50 km/h).

To Vary the Speed Setting

When the Electronic Speed Control is on, speed can be increased by pressing and holding the RESUME/ACCEL button. When the button is released, a new set speed will be established.

Tapping the ACCEL button once will result in a speed increase of 1 mph (2 km/h). Each time the button is tapped, speed increases so that tapping the button three times will increase speed by 3 mph (4.8 km/h).

Tapping the DECEL button once will result in a speed decrease of 1 mph (2 km/h). Each time the button is tapped, speed will decrease. For example, tapping the button three times will decrease the speed by 3 mph (4.8 km/h)

To decrease speed while the speed control is on, press and hold the DECEL button. Release the button when the desired speed is reached, and the new speed will be set.

To Accelerate for Passing

Depress the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

NOTE: When driving uphill, at elevations above 2,000 ft (610 m), or when the vehicle is heavily loaded (especially when towing) the vehicle may slow below the SET speed. If the vehicle speed drops below 25 mph (40 km/h), the speed control will automatically disengage. If this happens, you can push down on the accelerator pedal to maintain the desired speed.

Vehicles equipped with a 6–speed manual transmission should be operated in 4th or 5th gear under the above conditions.

WARNING!

Electronic Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control. An accident could be the result. Do not use Electronic Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered, or slippery.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE WITH ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER (EVIC)

The overhead console contains dome/reading lights, and an Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC).

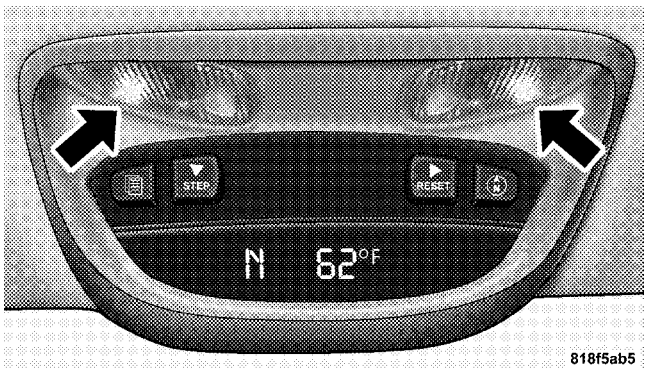
Dome/Reading Lights

Located in the overhead console are two dome/reading lights.

The dome/reading lights illuminate when a door is opened or when the interior lights are turned on by rotating the dimmer control located on the headlight switch.

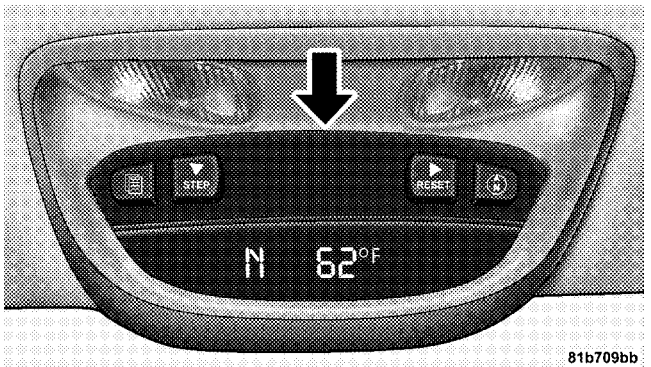
The reading lights are activated by pressing on the recessed area of the corresponding lens.

NOTE: The dome/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pressed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle.



Dome/Reading Lights

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) — If Equipped



Overhead Console With EVIC

Pressing the MENU button will change the display to one of the following features:

Trip Functions

Pressing the STEP button allows you to scroll through one of the following Trip Function features:

- TRIP – Shows the total distance traveled since the last reset. To reset the TRIP function, press and hold the RESET button.
- ELAPSED TIME – Shows the total elapsed time of travel since the last reset. Elapsed time will increment when the ignition switch is in the ON/RUN or START positions.
- UNIT IN US/METRIC – Press the RESET button to toggle between US and METRIC.

- AVG. MPG – Shows the average fuel economy since the last reset. When the fuel economy is reset, the display will show dashes for two seconds. Then the history information will be erased, and the averaging will continue from the last fuel average reading before the reset. (Example: If your EVIC displays 18 AVG. MPG and the RESET button is pressed, the previous averaging history will be erased and the display will return to the 18 AVG. MPG, not to 0 AVG. MPG.) The display may take several miles/kilometers for the value to change, dependent upon driving habits.
- MI TO EMPTY (Distance to Empty) – Shows the estimated distance that can be traveled with the fuel remaining in the tank. This estimated distance is determined by a weighted average of fuel economy, according to the current fuel tank level. MI TO EMPTY cannot be reset through the RESET button.

NOTE: Significant changes in driving style or vehicle loading will greatly affect the actual drivable distance of the vehicle, regardless of the MI TO EMPTY displayed value.

When the MI TO EMPTY value is less than 30 miles (48 km) estimated driving distance, the MI TO EMPTY display will change to a text display of ″LOW FUEL.″ This display will continue until the vehicle runs out of fuel. Adding a significant amount of fuel to the vehicle will turn off the ″LOW FUEL″ text and a new MI TO EMPTY value will display.

System Status (EVIC Displays)

When the appropriate conditions exist, the EVIC displays the following messages:

- TURN SIGNALS ON (with a continuous warning chime)

- PERSONAL SETTINGS NOT AVAILABLE – Vehicle not in PARK or Vehicle in Motion (Manual Transmission Only)
- LEFT/RIGHT FRONT DOOR AJAR (one or more, with a single chime if speed is above 1 mph (1.6 km/h)
- LEFT/RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR (one or more, with a single chime if speed is above 1 mph (1.6 km/h)
- DOOR(S) AJAR (with a single chime if vehicle is in motion)
- LOW WASHER FLUID (with a single chime)
- OIL CHANGE REQUIRED (with a single chime)
- SERVICE AIR FILTER
- PERFORM SERVICE
- EXHAUST FILTER XX% FULL
- EXHAUST FILTER FULL — POWER REDUCED SEE DEALER
- SERVICE REQUIRED — SEE DEALER NOW
- EXHAUST SYSTEM — REGENERATION REQUIRED NOW
- EXHAUST SYSTEM — REGENERATION IN PROCESS
- EXHAUST SYSTEM — REGENERATION COMPLETED
- TIRE PRESSURE LT LOAD SET
- TIRE PRESSURE MAX LOAD SET

Oil Change Required — If Equipped

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The "Oil Change Required" message will flash in the EVIC display for approximately 10 seconds after a single chime has sounded to indicate the next

scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

NOTE: When prompted by the Engine Oil Change Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Change Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should engine oil intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**

Unless reset, this message will continue to display each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position. To turn off the message temporarily, press and release the MENU button. To reset the oil change indicator system (after performing the scheduled maintenance) use the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position **(do not start the engine).**
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal slowly three times within 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF/LOCK position.

NOTE: If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.

Perform Service

This vehicle will require emissions maintenance at a set interval. To help remind you when this maintenance is due, the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) will display “Perform Service.” When the “Perform Service” message is displayed on the EVIC, it is necessary to have the emissions maintenance performed. Emissions maintenance includes replacing the Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) filter element, cleaning of the EGR

Cooler, and cleaning of the EGR Valve. The procedure for clearing and resetting the "Perform Service" indicator message is located in the appropriate service information.

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" in Section 8 for the proper emission maintenance intervals.

Personal Settings
(Customer Programmable Features)

Personal settings allows the driver to set and recall features when the transmission is in PARK. If the transmission is not in PARK, the EVIC will display NOT AVAILABLE and VEHICLE NOT IN PARK.

Press and release the MENU button until the Personal Settings displays on the EVIC.

Use the STEP button to display one of the following:

- "LANGUAGE" – When in this display you may select one of three languages for all display nomenclature, including the trip functions. Press the RESET button while in this display to select English, Espanol, or Francais. Then, as you continue, the information will display in the selected language.
- "AUTO DOOR LOCKS > ON" – When ON is selected, all doors will lock automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 mph (24 km/h). To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.
- "AUTO UNLOCK ON EXIT > ON" – When ON is selected, all doors will unlock when the vehicle is stopped and the transmission is in the PARK or NEUTRAL position and the driver's door is opened. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.

- "RKE UNLOCK DRV DR 1st" – When **DRV DR 1st** is selected, only the driver's door will unlock on the first press of the remote keyless entry UNLOCK button. When Driver Door 1st Press is selected, you must press the remote keyless entry UNLOCK button twice to unlock the passenger's doors. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "DRV DR 1st " appears.
- "RKE UNLOCK ALL DR 1ST" – When **ALL DR 1ST** is selected, all of the doors will unlock on the first press of the remote keyless entry unlock button. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "All DR 1st" appears.
- "SOUND HORN W/LOCK > ON" – When ON is selected, a short horn sound will occur when the remote keyless entry LOCK button is pressed. This feature may be selected with or without the flash lights on lock/unlock feature. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.
- "FLASH LIGHTS W/LOCK > ON" – When ON is selected, the front and rear turn signals will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the remote keyless entry transmitter. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.
- "HEAD LAMP OFF DELAY > 0 SEC" – When this feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "0," "30," "60," or "90" appears.

- "KEY OFF POWER DELAY > OFF" – When this feature is selected, the power window switches, radio, hands–free system (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned OFF. Opening a vehicle door will cancel this feature. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "Off," "45 sec.," "5 min.," "10 min." appears.
- "ILLUMINATED APRCH > OFF" – When this feature is selected, the headlights will activate and remain on for up to 90 seconds when the doors are unlocked with the remote keyless entry transmitter. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "OFF," "30 sec.," "60 sec.," or "90 sec." appears.

NOTE: If this feature is enabled, the headlamps will be on during the engine pre-heat and cold crank; therefore, it is recommended that the feature be disabled when overnight ambient temperature is at or below 20°F (-7°C) to prevent excessive drain on batteries during cold cranking.

- "UNIT IN > US/METRIC" – The EVIC and odometer display can be changed between English and Metric units of measure. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "US" or "METRIC" appears.
- "COMPASS VARIANCE > 8" – Press the RESET button to change the compass variance setting. For additional information, refer to "Compass Variance" in this section.
- "COMPASS CALIBRATE > YES" – Press the RESET button to calibrate the compass. For additional information, refer to "Compass Calibrate" in this section.

Compass/Temperature Button

Pressing the Compass/Temperature button will return the display to the normal compass/temperature display.

NOTE: Temperature accuracy can be affected from heat soak. For best accuracy, the vehicle should be driven at a speed greater than 25 mph (40 km/h) for several minutes.

Automatic Compass Calibration

This compass is self-calibrating, which eliminates the need to set the compass manually. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic and the EVIC will display "CAL" until the compass is calibrated. You may also calibrate the compass by completing one or more 360° turns (in an area free from large metal or metallic objects) until the "CAL" message displayed in the EVIC turns off. The compass will now function normally.

Manual Compass Calibration

If the compass appears erratic and the "CAL" message does not appear in the EVIC display, you must put the compass into the Calibration Mode manually as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

2. Press the MENU button until "Personal Settings" is displayed.

3. Press the STEP button until "Calibrate Compass YES" is displayed.

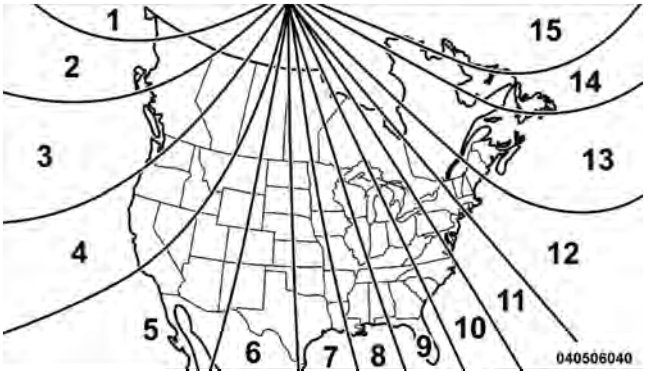
4. Press and release the RESET button to start the calibration. The message "CAL" will display in the EVIC.

5. Slowly drive the vehicle 5 mph (8 km/h) in a complete 360° circle (in an area free from large metal or metallic objects) until the "CAL" message turns off. The compass will now function normally.

Compass Variance

Compass Variance is the difference between magnetic North and Geographic North. In some areas of the country, the difference between magnetic and geographic North is great enough to cause the compass to give false readings. If this occurs, the compass variance must be set using the following procedure:

NOTE: Magnetic materials should be kept away from the overhead console. This is where the compass sensor is located.



Compass Variance Map

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.
2. Press the MENU button until “Personal Settings” is displayed.
3. Press the STEP button until “Compass Variance” is displayed.

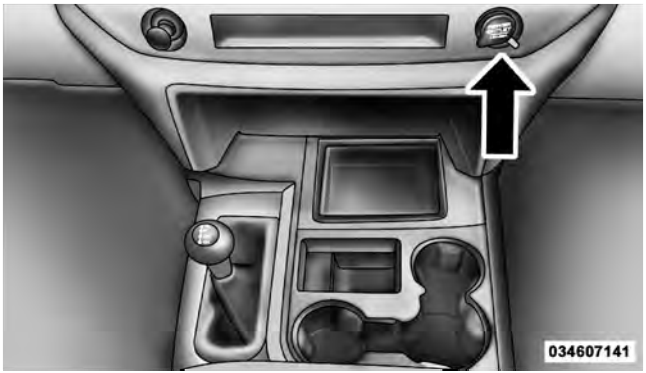
4. Press and release RESET button until the proper variance zone is selected according to the map.

5. Press and release the Compass button to exit.

ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS

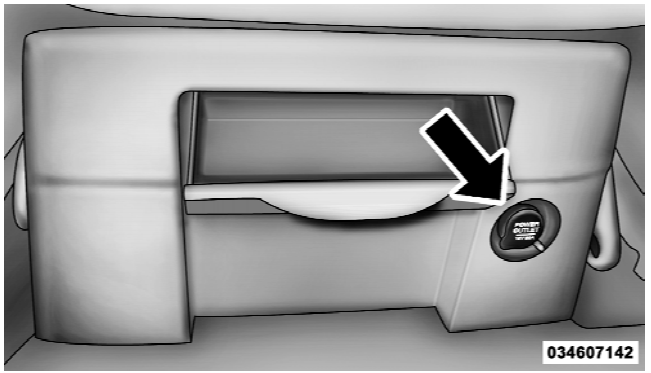
The auxiliary electrical power outlet can provide power for in-cab accessories designed for use with the standard "cigar lighter" plug. The power outlet is located in the instrument panel, below and to the right of the climate control panel. A cap is attached to the outlet base indicating "Power Outlet" 12 Volt (13 Amps).

There is an additional power outlet inside the center console of vehicle's equipped with 40-20-40, or bucket front seats.



Front Power Outlet

There is also a power outlet located on the rear of the center console (if equipped with bucket seats).



Rear Power Outlet

The power outlet(s) has/have a fused direct feed from the battery so it/they receive power whether the ignition is ON or OFF.

All accessories connected to this/these power outlet(s) should be removed or turned off when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.

NOTE:

- Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watt (13 Amp) power rating is exceeded the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.
- All accessories connected to the "battery" powered outlets should be removed or turned off when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.
- If desired, all of the power outlets can be converted by your authorized dealer to provide power with the ignition switch in the ON position only.

WARNING!

To avoid serious injury or death:

- **Only devices designed for use in this type of outlet should be inserted into any 12 Volt outlet.**
- **Do not touch with wet hands.**
- **Close the lid when not in use and while driving the vehicle.**
- **If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.**

CAUTION!

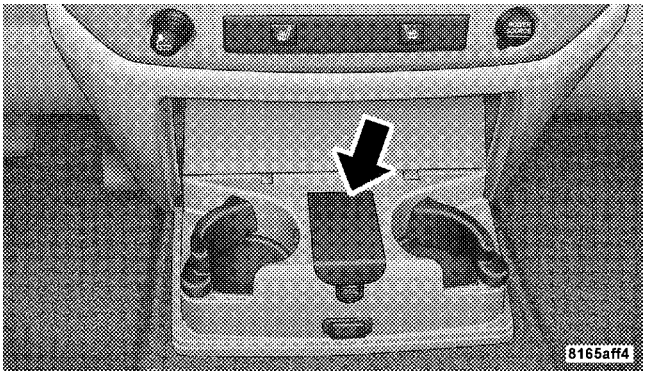
- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASH RECEIVER

The removable ash receiver is located in the instrument panel cupholder tray.

The cigar lighter is located on the instrument panel, above and to the left of the ash receiver.

As a child safety precaution, the lighter only operates with the ignition switch ON. It heats when pushed in and pops out automatically when ready for use. **To preserve the heating element, do not hold the lighter in the heating position.**



Ash Receiver

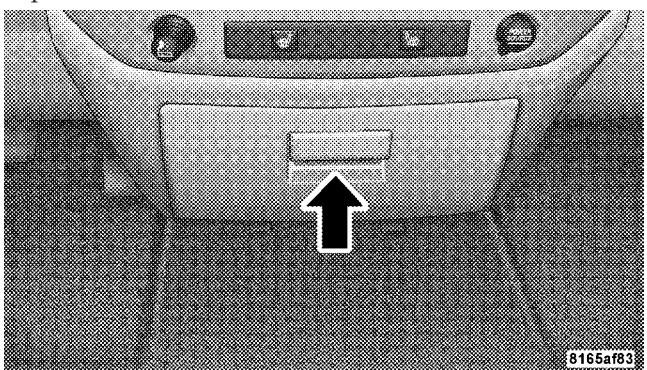
CUPHOLDERS

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats)

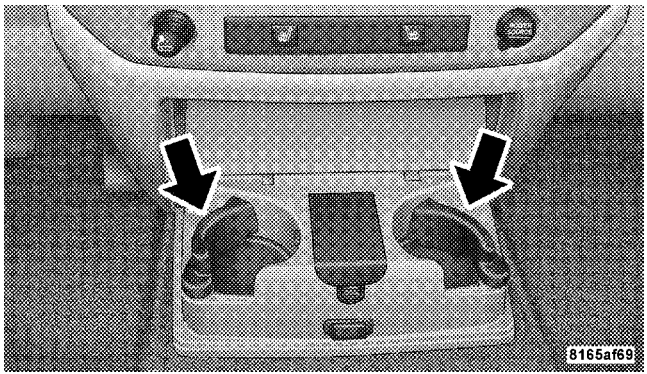
Your vehicle is equipped with two adjustable cupholders. The cupholder is opened by pulling on the cupholder

door handle, on the front surface. Each opening in the cupholder is adjustable and will hold cups and mugs of various sizes.

To secure the cup, place the cup to be held into one of the cup wells and then push the cupholder arm toward the cup until it is held stable.



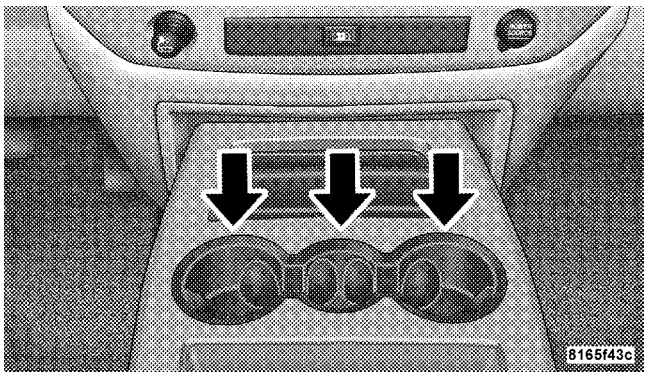
Cupholder Door Handle



Cupholders

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (Bucket Seats)

If your vehicle is equipped with bucket seats there are three cupholders located on the front of the center console.



Cupholders Bucket Seat

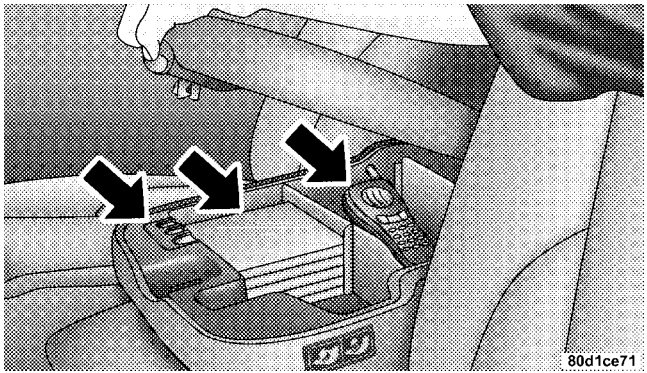
Rear Cupholder (Quad Cab®) — If Equipped

Quad Cab® vehicles may be equipped with a rear cupholder that consists of two cupwells for rear passenger convenience.

STORAGE

Center Storage Compartment (40–20–40 Seat) — If Equipped

The center portion of the seat folds down to provide an armrest with unique storage compartments under the lid. Push the button on the front of the armrest to raise the cover. Inside there is a power outlet (if equipped), removable coin holder (if equipped), and two dividers to configure the storage area into compartments. For example, compartments can be configured to hold a laptop computer, a cellular telephone, CDs and miscellaneous items. The top of the cover provides a generous firm surface to serve as a desktop for your "mobile office."



Center Storage Compartment

WARNING!

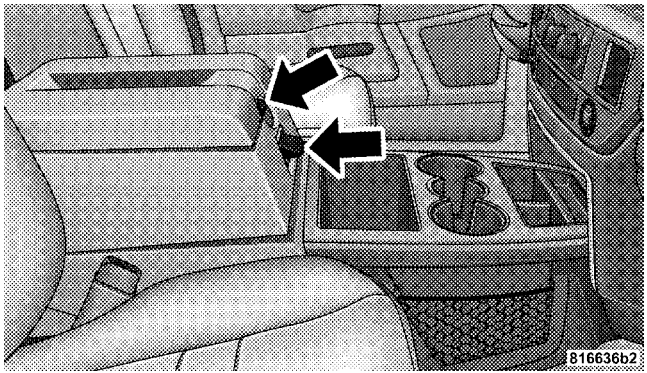
- **This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or an accident. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.**
- **In an accident, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).**

CAUTION!

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e. coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will degrade the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

Center Storage Compartment (Bucket Seats) — If Equipped

Push the upper button on the front of the armrest to raise the upper cover. Inside is a power outlet (if equipped), a cut out for a cell phone charger cord, removable coin holder (if equipped), and a divider to configure the storage area into separate compartments. Lift the lower handle on the front of the armrest, and raise the armrest for access to the lower storage bin. On Quad Cab® models the rear of the floor console offers a power outlet, and a tip out bin.



Center Storage Compartment

WARNING!

- **This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or an accident. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.**
- **In an accident, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).**

CAUTION!

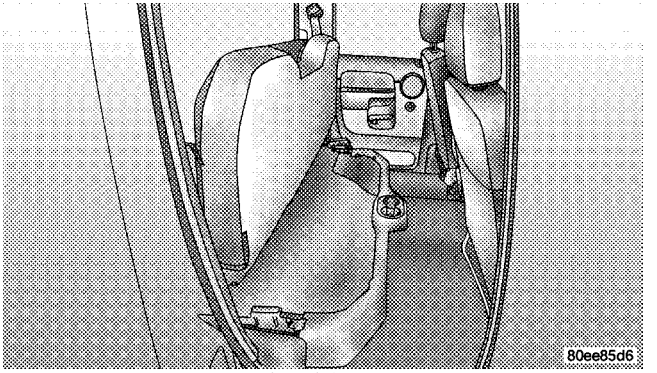
- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e. coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will degrade the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

Storage and Seats (Quad Cab® Models)

Located in the center of the front 40–20–40 seat cushion there is a storage compartment.

Regular Cab models also have storage behind the seat.

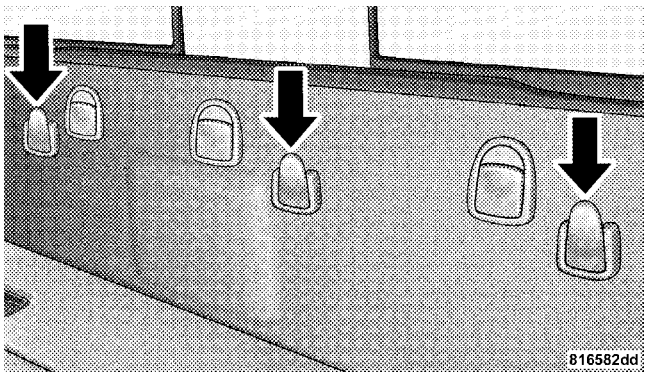
The Quad Cab® models provide additional storage under the rear seat. Lift the seat to access the storage compartment.



Quad Cab® Storage

Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers

Retainer hooks which will hold plastic grocery bag handles are built into the back panel of the cab, behind the rear seat.



Grocery Bag Hooks

FOLD FLAT LOAD FLOOR — IF EQUIPPED

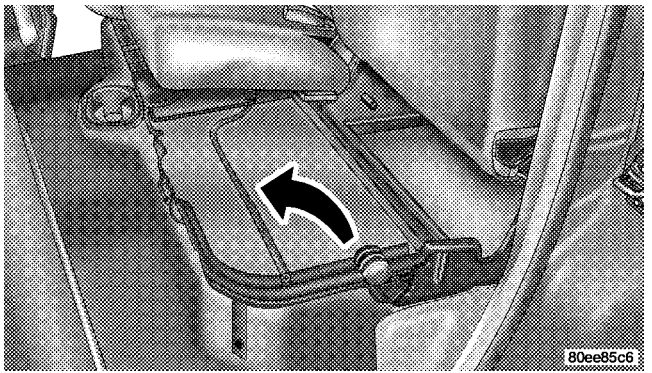
Quad Cab® models with a 60/40 rear seat may be equipped with a folding load floor.

WARNING!

Do not operate the vehicle with loose items stored on the load floor. While driving or in an accident you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. Loose objects stored on the load floor may move around with force and strike occupants, resulting in serious or fatal injury.

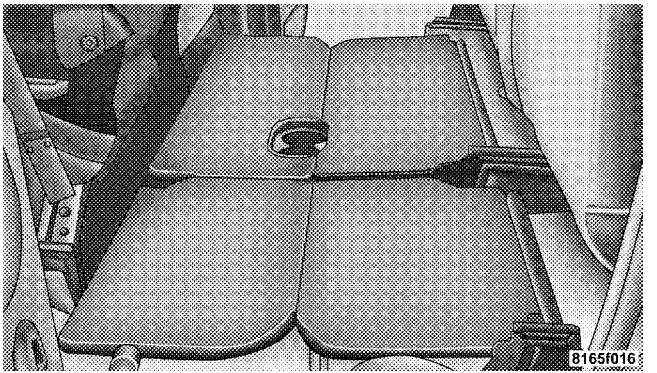
Unfolding the Load Floor

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.



Unfolding The Load Floor

2. Grasp the knob on the load floor and lift the knob until the load floor unfolds into position.



Load Floor In Open Position

3. Reverse the procedure to store the load floor.

Positioning the Load Floor for Storage Access Under the Seat

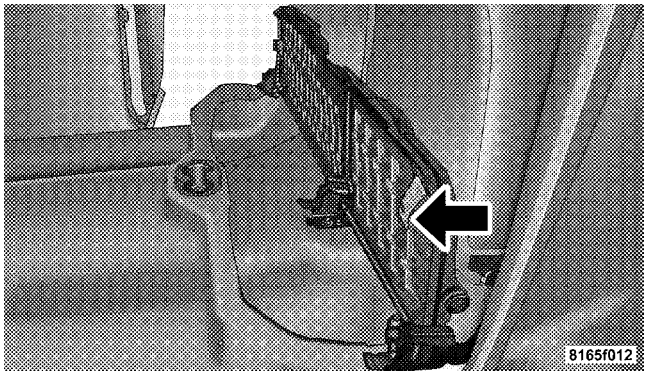
1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.

2. Unsnap the securing snap located at either side of the load floor.

3. Lift the load floor up to access storage under the load floor.

WARNING!

Do not drive with the load floor in the up position. When stopping fast or in an accident, the load floor could move to the down position causing serious injury.



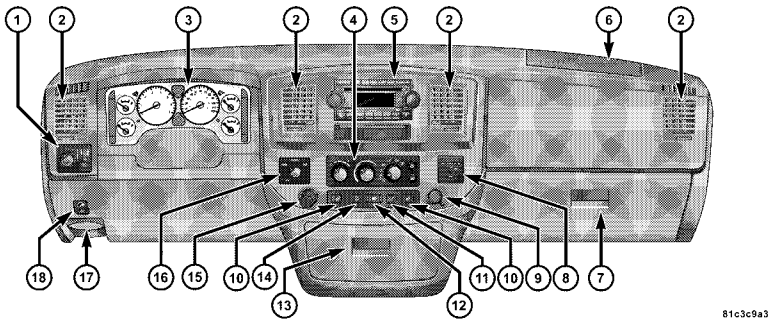
Load Floor Securing Straps

4. Reverse the procedure to put the load floor back in the secured down position before you operate the vehicle.

UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

CONTENTS

INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES

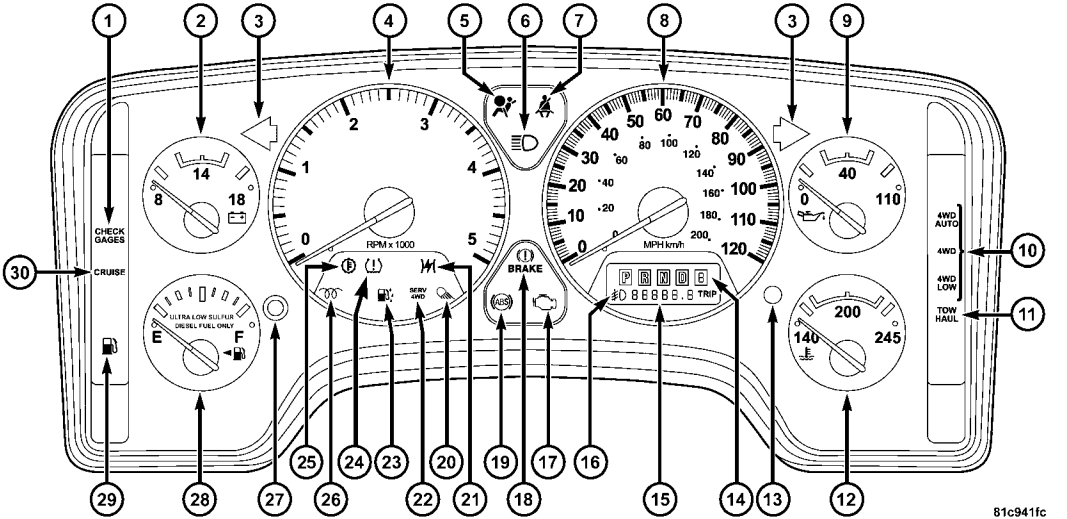


1 — Headlight Switch
2 — Air Outlets
3 — Instrument Cluster
4 — Climate Controls
5 — Radio
6 — Passenger Airbag*
7 — Glove Box
8 — Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch*
9 — Power Outlet
10 — Heated Seat Switch
11 — TPMS "Light Load" Reset Switch*
12 — Power Sliding Back Glass Switch*
13 — Cupholders
14 — Exhaust Brake Switch*
15 — Cigar Lighter
16 — Transfer Case Control Switch*
17 — Parking Brake Release Lever
18 — Adjustable Pedal Control Switch*

* If Equipped

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

6.7L Diesel Engine



INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DESCRIPTION

1. Check Gages Warning Light

CHECK GAGES This light will illuminate when the voltmeter, engine oil pressure, or engine coolant temperature gauge indicates a reading either too high or too low. Examine the gauges carefully, and follow the instructions contained below for each indicated problem.

NOTE: When the ignition switch is turned to OFF, the fuel gauge, voltmeter, oil pressure and engine coolant temperature gauges may not show accurate readings. When the engine is not running, turn the ignition switch to ON to obtain accurate readings.

2. Voltmeter

When the engine is running, the gauge indicates the electrical system voltage. The pointer should stay within the normal range if the battery is charged. If the pointer moves to either the extreme left or right, and remains there during normal driving, the electrical system should be serviced.

If jump starting is required, refer to "Jump Starting Procedures" in section 6 of this manual.

NOTE:

- If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gages Warning Light" will illuminate and a single chime will sound.
- The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.

- The cycling action will cause temporary dimming of the headlights, interior lights, and also a noticeable reduction in blower motor speed.

3. Turn Signal Indicator Light

The arrows will flash with the exterior turn signals when the turn signal lever is operated.

4. Tachometer

The tachometer indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute.

CAUTION!

Do not operate the engine with the tachometer pointer at high RPM for extended periods. Engine damage may occur.

5. Airbag Warning Light

The indicator lights and remains lit for six to eight seconds when the ignition is first turned on. If the light stays on, flickers or comes on while driving, have the airbag system checked by an authorized dealer.

6. High Beam Indicator Light

This indicator shows that headlights are on high beam.

7. Seat Belt Reminder Light

When the ignition switch is first turned ON, this light will turn on for five to eight seconds as a bulb check. During the bulb check, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound. After the bulb check or when driving, if the driver seat belt remains unbuckled, the "Seat Belt Warning Light" will flash or remain on continuously.

8. Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed in miles per hour (mph) and/or kilometers per hour (km/h).

9. Oil Pressure Gauge

The pointer should always indicate some oil pressure when the engine is running. A continuous high or low reading, under normal driving conditions, may indicate a lubrication system malfunction. Immediate service should be obtained.

NOTE: If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gages Warning Light" will illuminate and a single chime will sound.

10. Transfer Case Position Light

This display indicator shows the transfer case position selection.

For additional information refer to "Four-Wheel Drive Operation" in Section 5 of this manual.

11. TOW HAUL Indicator Light

The TOW HAUL button is located at the end of the shift lever. This light will illuminate when the TOW HAUL button is pushed once.

12. Temperature Gauge

The temperature gauge indicates engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the cooling system is operating satisfactorily. The gauge needle will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, in heavy traffic, or when towing a trailer. If the needle rises to the 245°F (118°C) mark, stop the vehicle, shift into NEUTRAL, and increase the engine idle speed for two to three minutes. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, shut your engine OFF and allow it to cool. Seek authorized service immediately. Refer to "Cooling System" under "Maintaining Your Vehicle" in Section 7.

CAUTION!

Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running, as you would not be able to react to the temperature indicator if the engine overheats.

NOTE:

- Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1,000 RPM at elevated coolant temperatures to improve engine cooling.
- If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gages Warning Light" will illuminate and a single chime will sound.

13. Vehicle Security Light

The light will flash rapidly for approximately 16 seconds when the Vehicle Security Alarm is arming. The light will flash at a slower rate after the alarm is set. The "Vehicle Security Light" will also come on for about two seconds when the ignition is first turned ON.

14. Shift Lever Indicator
(Automatic Transmissions Only)

When the shift lever is moved (on vehicles with the 68RFE transmission), this indicator will show the selected gear range (P R N D). Vehicles equipped with Auto-6/ Electronic Range Select (ERS) will display the selection of the desired top gear, in the position next to the D (Drive).

15. Odometer/Trip Odometer

The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven. U.S. Federal regulations require that upon transfer of vehicle ownership, the seller certify to the purchaser the correct mileage that the vehicle has been driven. If your odometer needs to be repaired or serviced, the repair technician should leave the odometer reading the same as it was before the repair or service. If s/he

cannot do so, then the odometer must be set at zero, and a sticker must be placed in the door jamb stating what the mileage was before the repair or service. It is a good idea for you to make a record of the odometer reading before the repair/service, so that you can be sure that it is properly reset, or that the door jamb sticker is accurate if the odometer must be reset at zero.

The two trip odometers show individual trip mileage. To switch from odometer to trip odometers, press and release the Trip Odometer button.

To reset a trip odometer, display the desired trip odometer to be reset then push and hold the button (approximately two seconds) until the display resets.

Vehicle Warning Messages

When the appropriate conditions exist, messages such as "door" (indicates that a door(s) may be ajar), "gASCAP" (which indicates that your gas cap is possibly loose or damaged), and "noFUSE" (indicates that the IOD fuse is removed from the Integrated Power Module), will display in the odometer.

NOTE: There is also an engine hour function. This indicates the total number of hours the engine has been running. To display the engine hours perform the following: Place the ignition in RUN, but do not start the engine. With the odometer value displayed, hold the trip button down for a period of six seconds. The odometer will change to trip value first, then it will display the engine hour value. The engine hours will be displayed for a period of 30 seconds until the ignition is turned off or the engine is started.

DPF Full

The messages "dPF" and "FULL" will alternately display in the odometer when Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

service is required. Refer to "Overhead Console with Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in Section 3 for more information.

16. Front Fog Light Indicator Light — If Equipped

This indicator will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

17. Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is part of an onboard diagnostic system which monitors the emissions and engine control system. If the vehicle is ready for emissions testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on, as a bulb check, until the engine is started. If the vehicle is not ready for emissions testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on for 15 seconds, then blink for five seconds, and remain on until the vehicle is started. If the bulb does not come on during starting, have the condition investigated promptly. If this light comes on and remains on while driving, it suggests a potential engine control problem and the need for system service.

Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause damage to the engine control system. It also could affect fuel economy and drivability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

WARNING!

A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants or wood or cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.

18. Brake Warning Light

BRAKE

This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on, it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir.

If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the "Brake Warning Light," which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

NOTE: The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.

WARNING!

Driving a vehicle with the "Brake Warning Light" on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have an accident. Have the vehicle checked immediately.

Vehicles equipped with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the "Brake Warning Light" will turn on along with the "ABS Warning Light." Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.

Operation of the "Brake Warning Light" can be checked by turning the ignition switch from the OFF position to the ON position. The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the ON position.

NOTE: This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

19. Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Warning Light

This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). The light will turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the "ABS Warning Light" remains on or turns on while driving, it indicates that the Anti-Lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally if the "Brake Warning Light" is not on.

If the "ABS Warning Light" is on, the brake system should be serviced as soon as possible to restore the benefits of Anti-Lock brakes. If the "ABS Warning Light" does not turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

20. Cargo Light — If Equipped

The cargo light will illuminate when the cargo light is activated by pressing the cargo light button on the headlight switch.

21. Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Warning Light

This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. If a problem is detected, the light will come on while the engine is running. If the light remains lit with the engine running, your vehicle will usually be drivable; however, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. If the light is flashing when the engine is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated/ rough idle or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on for 15 seconds as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

22. SERV 4WD Indicator Light

SERV 4WD

The "4WD" indicator will be illuminated whenever the four-wheel drive mode is engaged on either the manual or electric shift four-wheel drive systems. The "SERV 4WD Indicator Light" monitors the electronic shift four-wheel drive system. If the "SERV 4WD Indicator Light" stays on or comes on while driving, it means that the four-wheel drive system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

23. Water In Fuel Indicator Light

Indicates there is water detected in the fuel filter. If this light remains on, DO NOT start the vehicle before you drain the water from the fuel filter to prevent engine damage. Refer to "Maintenance Procedures/ Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter" in Section 7 for water drain procedure.

24. Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light — If Equipped

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly, when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to

overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle, to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

CAUTION!

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Do not use tire sealant from a can, or balance beads if your vehicle is equipped with a TPMS, as damage to the sensors may result.

(Continued)

Tire Light Load Inflation Switch – If Equipped
The tire light load inflation switch allows you to choose between "Light Load" vehicle conditions and "Max Load" vehicle conditions, tire pressures, and related TPMS warning levels. The switch is located on the instrument panel, below the climate control panel.

25. Transmission Temperature Warning Light (Automatic Transmissions Only)

This light indicates that there is excessive transmission fluid temperature that might occur with severe usage such as trailer towing. It may also occur when operating the vehicle in a high torque converter slip condition, such as four-wheel drive operation (e.g., snow plowing, off-road operation). If this light comes on, stop the vehicle and run the engine at idle or faster, with the transmission in NEUTRAL until the light goes off.

CAUTION!

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

WARNING!

In some circumstances a Transmission Temperature Warning Light, under continued operation, could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

26. Wait To Start Light

The "Wait To Start Light" will illuminate when the ignition is turned to the RUN position and the intake manifold temperature is below 66°F (19°C). Follow

engine starting procedure for proper engine starting and operating. Wait until the "Wait To Start Light" turns OFF, then start the vehicle.

NOTE: The "Wait To Start Light" may not illuminate if the intake manifold temperature is warm enough.

27. Odometer/Trip Odometer Button
Press this button to toggle between the odometer and the trip odometer display. Holding the button in resets the trip odometer reading when in trip mode.

28. Fuel Gauge
Shows level of fuel in tank when ignition switch is in the ON position.

29. Low Fuel Warning Light

This light will illuminate when the pointer is between "E" and 1/8 indication mark (approximately 15% of tank volume) on the fuel gauge. When the fuel gauge pointer is on "E" (equivalent to Distance To Empty [DTE] = 0 on the overhead console, if so equipped) there is reserve fuel capacity, which corresponds to approximately 8% of tank volume. This reserve capacity was put in place to prevent the likelihood of customers running out of fuel when operating at maximum load conditions in areas where there are not many fuel stations.

30. CRUISE Indicator Light
CRUISE This light will illuminate when the electronic speed control system is turned on.

ELECTRONIC DIGITAL CLOCK

The clock and radio each use the display panel built into the radio. A digital readout shows the frequency and/or time in hours and minutes (depending on your radio model) whenever the ignition switch is in the ON or ACC position.

When the ignition switch is in the OFF position, or when the radio frequency is being displayed, time keeping is accurately maintained.

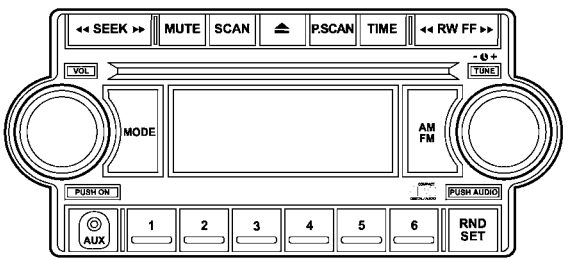
On the RAQ radio the time button alternates the location of the time and frequency on the display. On the REF only one of the two, time or frequency, is displayed at a time.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.
2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune/Audio control.
3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune/Audio control to set the minutes.
4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune/Audio control.
5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait approximately five seconds.

SALES CODE REF — AM/FM/CD (SINGLE-DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL uconnect™ studios (SATELLITE RADIO) AND uconnect™ phone CAPABILITY

NOTE: The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of your radio faceplate.



REF Radio

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Push the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Push the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360–degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

For your convenience, the volume can be turned down, but not up, when the audio system is OFF and the ignition is ON.

MODE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MODE button repeatedly to select between the CD player and Satellite Radio (if equipped).

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next listenable station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

MUTE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. “MUTE” will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON/OFF, or turning the ignition ON/OFF, will cancel the MUTE feature.

NOTE: In Hands-Free Phone (if equipped) mode, the MUTE button mutes the microphone.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next listenable station in either, AM, FM, or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for five seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

PSCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the PSCAN button causes the tuner to scan through preset stations in either AM, FM, or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for five seconds at each preset station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press PSCAN a second time.

TIME Button
Press the TIME button and the time of day will display for five seconds.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the TIME button until the hours blink.
2. Adjust the hours by turning the TUNE/AUDIO control.
3. After the hours are adjusted, press the TUNE/AUDIO control to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.
4. Adjust the minutes using the TUNE/AUDIO control.
5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait five seconds.

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the Rewind/Fast Forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the rotary TUNE control clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control, and "BASS" will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and "MID" will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid-Range tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and "TREB" will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and "BAL" will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and "FADE" will display. Turn the TUNE control to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the TUNE control again or wait five seconds to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

RND/SET Button (Radio Mode) To Set The Pushbutton Memory
When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not

selected within five seconds after pressing the SET button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.

You may add a second station to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET button twice and "SET 2" will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations to be stored into pushbutton memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

Preset Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)
These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to pushbutton memory, 12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations.

Operating Instructions - CD Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Inserting The Compact Disc (Single CD Player)
Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display.

If the volume control is ON, the unit will switch to CD mode and begin to play. The display will show the track number and play time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

NOTE:
- On some vehicles, you may insert or eject a disc with the radio or ignition switch OFF.

- If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio OFF, the CD will automatically be pulled into the CD player.
- This radio does not play discs with MP3 tracks.

SEEK Button (CD Mode)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next track on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current track, or return to the beginning of the previous track if the CD is within the first 10 seconds of the current selection.

MUTE Button (CD Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. "MUTE" will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning the ignition OFF/ON will also return the sound from the speakers.

SCAN Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to play the first 10 seconds of each track. To stop the scan function, press the button a second time.

EJECT Button (CD Mode)

Press this button and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. The unit will switch to the last selected mode.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. The radio mode will continue to appear.

TIME Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to change the display from elapsed CD playing time to time of day. The time of day will display for five seconds.

RW/FF (CD Mode)
Press and hold the FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released. The RW (Rewind) button works in a similar manner.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature. If the RW button is pressed, the current track will reverse to the beginning of the track and begin playing.

RND/SET Button (Random Play Button) (CD Mode)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random play.

Operating Instructions - Auxiliary Mode

The auxiliary (AUX) jack is an audio input jack, which allows the user to plug in a portable device such as an MP3 player, cassette player, or microphone and utilize the vehicle's audio system to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

The auxiliary mode becomes active when an electrical device is plugged into the AUX jack using a standard 3.5 mm stereo audio cable and the user presses and releases the MODE button until "AUX" appears on the display.

NOTE: The radio will return to the last stored mode if the ignition switch is turned from the OFF/LOCK position to the ACC position, the radio is turned on, and the radio was previously in the AUX mode.

SEEK Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

MUTE Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. "MUTE" will display. Press the MUTE button a

second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning the ignition OFF/ON will also return the sound from the speakers.

SCAN Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

EJECT Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

PSCAN Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

TIME Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press this button to change the display from elapsed playing time to time of day. The time of day will display for five seconds.

RW/FF (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

RND/SET Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

MODE Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press the MODE button repeatedly to select between the CD player and Satellite Radio (if equipped).

Operating Instructions - uconnect™ phone — If Equipped

Refer to the "uconnect™ phone" section of this Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - uconnect™ studios (Satellite Radio) — If Equipped

Refer to the "uconnect™ studios (Satellite Radio)" section of this Owner's Manual.

uconnect™ studios (SATELLITE RADIO) — IF EQUIPPED

Satellite radio uses direct satellite to receiver broadcasting technology to provide clear digital sound, coast to coast. The subscription service provider is Sirius Satellite Radio. This service offers over 130 channels of music, sports, news, entertainment, and programming for children, directly from its satellites and broadcasting studios.

NOTE: Sirius service is not available in Hawaii and has limited coverage in Alaska.

System Activation

Sirius Satellite Radio service is pre-activated, and you may begin listening immediately to the one year of audio service that is included with the factory-installed satellite radio system in your vehicle. Sirius will supply a welcome kit that contains general information, including how to setup your on-line listening account. For further information, call the toll-free number 888-539-7474, or visit the Sirius web site at www.sirius.com, or at www-.siriuscanada.ca for Canadian residents.

Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID)

Please have the following information available when calling:

1. The Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID).

2. Your Vehicle Identification Number.

To access the ESN/SID, refer to the following procedure.

ESN/SID Access

With the ignition switch in the ACC position and the radio OFF, press the CD Eject and TIME buttons simultaneously for three seconds. The first four digits of the 12-digit ESN/SID number will display. Press the SEEK UP button to display the next four digits. Continue to press the SEEK

UP button until all 12 ESN/SID digits display. The SEEK DOWN will page down until the first four digits display. The radio will exit the ESN/SID mode when any other button is pushed, the ignition is turned OFF, or five minutes have passed since any button was pushed.

Selecting uconnect™ studios (Satellite) Mode

Selecting Satellite Mode

Press the MODE button repeatedly until the word ″SAT″ appears in the display.

A CD may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

Selecting A Channel

Press and release the SEEK or TUNE knob to search for the next channel. Press the top of the button to search up and the bottom of the button to search down. Holding the TUNE button causes the radio to bypass channels until the button is released.

Press and release the SCAN button (if equipped) to automatically change channels every seven seconds. The radio will pause on each channel for seven seconds before moving on to the next channel. The word ″SCAN″ will appear in the display between each channel change. Press the SCAN button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Channels that may contain objectionable content can be blocked. Contact Sirius Customer Care at 888-539-7474 to discuss options for channel blocking or unblocking. Please have your ESN/SID information available.

Storing And Selecting Preset Channels

In addition to the 12 AM and 12 FM preset stations, you may also commit 12 satellite stations to pushbutton memory. These satellite channel preset stations will not erase any AM or FM preset memory stations. Follow the memory preset procedures that apply to your radio.

Using The PTY (Program Type) Button — If Equipped

Follow the PTY button instructions that apply to your radio.

PTY Button SCAN

When the desired program type is obtained, press the SCAN button within five seconds. The radio will play seven seconds of the selected channel before moving to the next channel of the selected program type. Press the SCAN button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Pressing the SEEK or SCAN button, while performing a music-type scan, will change the channel by one and stop the search. Pressing a preset memory button during a music-type scan will call up the memory channel and stop the search.

PTY Button SEEK

When the desired program is obtained, press the SEEK button within five seconds. The channel will change to the next channel that matches the program type selected.

Satellite Antenna

To ensure optimum reception on vehicles available with a luggage rack, do not place items on the roof around the rooftop antenna location. Metal objects placed within the line of sight of the antenna will cause decreased performance. Larger luggage items should be placed as far forward as possible. Do not place items directly on or above the antenna.

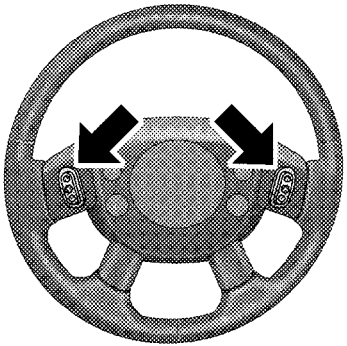
Reception Quality

Satellite reception may be interrupted due to one of the following reasons:

- The vehicle is parked in an underground parking structure or under a physical obstacle.
- Dense tree coverage may interrupt reception.
- Driving under wide bridges or along tall buildings can cause intermittent reception.
- Placing objects over or too close to the antenna can cause signal blockage.

REMOTE SOUND SYSTEM CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED

The remote sound system controls are located on the rear surface of the steering wheel. Reach behind the wheel to access the switches.



Remote Sound System Controls (Back View Of Steering Wheel)

The right-hand control is a rocker type switch with a button in the center. Pressing the top of the switch will increase the volume, and pressing the bottom of the switch will decrease the volume. The center button of the right-hand control will allow you to change the mode.

The left-hand control is a rocker type switch with a push button in the center. The function of the left-hand control is different, depending on which mode you are in.

The following describes the left-hand control operation in each mode.

Radio Operation

Pressing the top of the left side switch will seek up for the next listenable station and pressing the bottom of the switch will seek down for the next listenable station.

The button located in the center of the left-hand control will tune to the next pre-set station that you have programmed in the radio pre-set push-buttons.

CD Player

Pressing the top of the switch once will go to the next track on the CD. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current track or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within one second after the current track; begins to play.

If you press the switch up or down twice it plays the second track, three times, it will play the third, etc.

The button in the center of the left-hand switch has no function in this mode.

CD/DVD MAINTENANCE

To keep a CD/DVD in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.

2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.

3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.

4. Do not use solvents such as benzene, thinner, cleaners, or anti-static sprays.

5. Store the disc in its case after playing.

6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.

7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

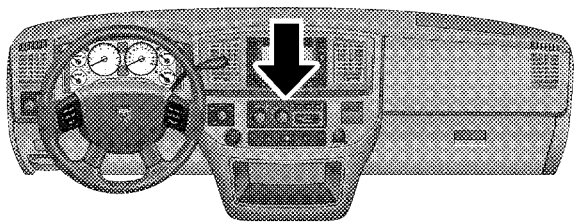
NOTE: If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged (i.e., scratched, reflective coating removed, a hair, moisture or dew on the disc) oversized, or have protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.

RADIO OPERATION AND CELLULAR PHONES

Under certain conditions, the operation of a cellular phone in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the cellular phone antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily "clear" by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during cellular phone operation.

CLIMATE CONTROLS

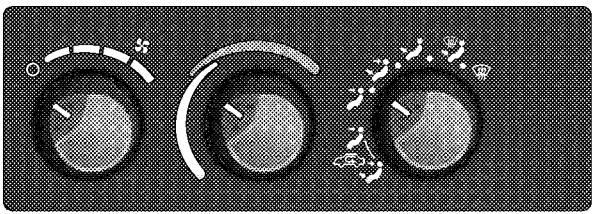
The controls for the heating and ventilation system in this vehicle consist of a series of rotary knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.



8164639b

Climate Control Location

Heater Only — If Equipped



81646397

Manual Heating Controls

816463c5

The mode control (at the right of the control panel) can be set in any of the following positions:

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel.

Recirculation Modes (Panel or Bi-Level)


811b86ba

Select the recirculation modes when the outside air contains smoke or odors. This feature allows for recirculation of interior air only. Air flows through the panel outlets in this mode. Air flows through the panel only or through both the panel and floor vents depending on the selected mode (panel vs bi-level).

Bi-Level

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and at the floor.

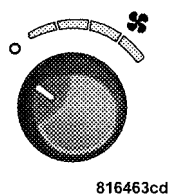
Mix

Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets.

Defrost

Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield, and the demister outlets located at the edge of each side of the instrument panel.

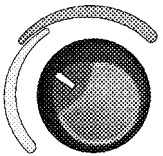
Blower Control


816463cd

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

NOTE: For vehicles equipped with Remote Start, the climate controls will not function during Remote Start operation if the blower control is left in the "O" (Off) position.

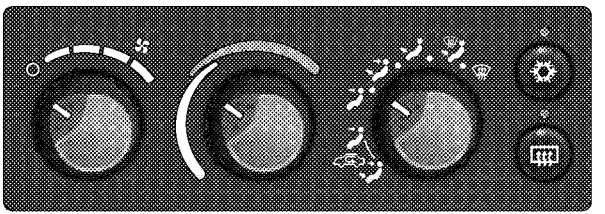
Temperature Control



816463c9

The rotary knob at the center of the control panel controls the temperature of the interior air. You can choose your degree of comfort by rotating the knob. The coldest temperature setting is to the extreme left (blue region) and the warmest setting is to the extreme right (red region) of the rotation.

Air Conditioning and Heating — If Equipped



81646393

Air Conditioning And Heating

Air Conditioning Operation

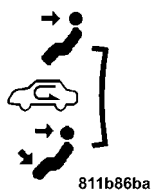
To turn on the air conditioning, set the fan control at any speed and press the snowflake button located at the right of the control panel. Conditioned air will be directed through the outlets selected by the mode control. A light in the snowflake button shows that the air conditioning is on. Press the button a second time to turn the air conditioning off.

Slight changes in engine speed or power may be noticed when the air conditioning compressor is on. This is a normal occurrence, as the compressor will cycle on and off to maintain comfort and increase fuel economy.

The mode control (at the right of the control panel) can be set in any of the following positions:

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots.

Recirculation Modes (Panel or Bi-Level)



Select the recirculation modes when the outside air contains smoke, odors, high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired. This feature allows for recirculation of interior air only. Air flows through the panel only or through

both the panel and floor vents depending on the selected mode (panel vs bi-level).

NOTE: Selecting a "Recirculation Mode" mode does not necessarily consume more fuel than normal A/C mode.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel.

Bi-Level

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and at the floor.

Floor

Outside air flows primarily through the floor outlets located under the instrument panel.

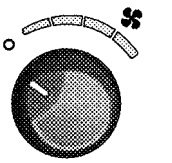
Mix

Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets, and the air conditioning may be on.

Defrost

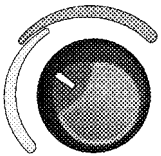
Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield, and the demister outlets located at the edge of each side of the instrument panel, and the air conditioning may be on.

Blower Control


816463cd

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

Temperature Control


816463c9

The rotary knob at the center of the control panel controls the temperature of the interior air. You can choose your degree of comfort by rotating the knob. The coldest temperature setting is to the extreme left (blue region) and the warmest setting is to the extreme right (red region) of the rotation.

Circulation

The cab is designed with features to promote outside air circulation. There are grilles in the cab back panel. These are air exhausters that provide the means for regular exchange of cab air.

Side window demisters direct air flow specifically to the window glass to help prevent interior fogging of the glass. They are located in the extreme outside upper edges of the instrument panel. The demisters also provide extra air ducts for circulation. They are in operation whenever the Floor, Mix or Defrost modes are in use. To remove frost from the side windows, it is best to use the full defrost mode.

NOTE: When you turn off the engine you may hear a hissing sound from under the hood for a short period of time. This is a normal condition that occurs if the air conditioning system has been on. It is not an indication of a problem with the air conditioning system.

Operating Tips

Fast Cooldown

For a fast cooldown, turn the blower fan rotary knob to the extreme right position, turn the mode control to the panel fresh position, press the snowflake button to turn on the air conditioning, and drive with the windows open for the first few minutes. Once the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and press the recirculation pushbutton on dual zone control, or switch the mode from panel/fresh to panel/recirculate on single zone control. When a comfortable condition has been reached, choose a mode position and adjust the temperature control slide and blower speed as necessary to maintain comfort. For high humidity conditions it may be necessary to remain in the Recirculation mode to maintain comfort.

Window Fogging

Windows will fog on the inside when the humidity inside the vehicle is high. This often occurs in mild or cool temperatures when it's rainy or humid. In most cases turning on the air conditioning (pressing the snowflake button) will clear the fog. Adjust the temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort.

As the temperature gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield by using the Mix mode position on the control. Adjust the temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging. Interior fogging on the windshield can be quickly removed by selecting the defrost mode.

Regular cleaning of the inside of the windows with a non-filming cleaning solution (vinegar and water works very well) will help prevent contaminates (cigarette smoke, perfumes, etc.) from sticking to the windows. Contaminates increase the rate of window fogging.

Summer Operation

Air conditioned vehicles must be protected with a high quality antifreeze coolant during summer to provide proper corrosion protection and to raise the boiling point of the coolant for protection against overheating. A 50 % concentration is recommended. Refer to ″Engine Coolant″ under " Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in section 7.

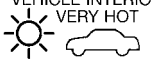
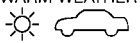
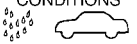
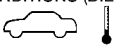
When using the air conditioner in extremely heavy traffic in hot weather, especially when towing a trailer, additional engine cooling may be required. If this situation is encountered, operate the transmission in a lower gear to increase engine RPM, coolant flow and fan speed. When stopped in heavy traffic, it may be necessary to shift into NEUTRAL and depress the accelerator slightly for fast idle operation to increase coolant flow and fan speed.

Your air conditioning system is also equipped with an automatic recirculation system. When the system senses a heavy load or high heat conditions, it may use partial Recirculation A/C mode to provide additional comfort.

Winter Operation

When operating the system during the winter months, make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of ice, slush, snow, or other obstructions.

Operating Tips Chart

WEATHER	CONTROL SETTINGS
HOT WEATHER AND VEHICLE INTERIOR IS VERY HOT 	Start the vehicle, open the windows and turn the blower control knob to the high position (full clockwise). Set Mode control knob at or between and . Set temperature control to full cold and press the button on. After the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and turn the mode control knob to the setting (counterclockwise) at either or , or press the button (if so equipped). Once comfortable, choose a mode position and adjust temperature control and blower speed as necessary for comfort.
WARM WEATHER 	If sunny, set the Mode control at or near and press the button on. If cloudy or dark, set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COOL OR COLD HUMID CONDITIONS 	If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and , then press the button on. If cloudy or dark set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COLD DRY CONDITIONS 	In cloudy or dark weather set the Mode control at or near . If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and , and for snowy or very cold weather requiring extra heat to the windshield, use .
EXTREME COLD CONDITIONS (DIESEL) 	Using re-circulated air can aid initial warm-up in extreme cold conditions. **NOTICE: Running in /MAX for long periods of time will result in window fogging. When this occurs, use until windows clear. This will deactivate /MAX. SINGLE ZONE VEHICLES:** Set the mode control at + /MAX, close the panel vents and set the temperature control to full hot. Turn blower control knob to low and gradually increase as air and engine temperature increase. **DUAL ZONE VEHICLES:** Set the mode control at , set both temperature controls to full hot and press the /MAX button. Turn blower control knob to low and gradually increase as air and engine temperature increase.
WINDOW FOGGING	In most cases turning on the Air-Conditioning (press the button) will clear the fog, then adjust temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort. As it gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield. If so, set the Mode control at or and adjust temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging.

8159dfbc

STARTING AND OPERATING

CONTENTS

STARTING PROCEDURES

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

The starter should not be operated for more than 15-second intervals. Waiting a few minutes between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

WARNING!

Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.

Manual Transmission – If Equipped

Apply the parking brake, place the shift lever in NEUTRAL and press the clutch pedal to the floor before starting the vehicle. This vehicle is equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. It will not start unless the clutch is fully pressed.

Automatic Transmission – If Equipped

Start the engine with the shift lever in NEUTRAL or PARK position. Apply the brake before shifting to any driving range.

The Cummins® diesel engine is equipped with several features designed to assist cold weather starting and operation:

- The engine block heater is a resistance heater installed in the water jacket of the engine just above and behind the oil filter. It requires a 110–115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

NOTE: The engine block heater cord is a factory installed option. If your vehicle is not equipped, heater cords are available from your authorized MOPAR® dealer.

- A 12 Volt heater built into the fuel filter housing aids in preventing fuel gelling. It is controlled by a built-in thermostat.
- A heated intake air system both improves engine starting and reduces the amount of white smoke generated by a warming engine.

Normal Starting Procedure – Engine Manifold Air Temperature Above 66°F (19°C)

Observe the instrument panel cluster lights when starting the engine.

1. Always apply the parking brake.

2. Shift into PARK for an automatic transmission. For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, fully press and hold the clutch pedal and shift into NEUTRAL.

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position and watch the instrument panel cluster lights.

CAUTION!

If the "Water in Fuel Indicator Light" remains on, DO NOT START the engine before you drain the water from the fuel filter to avoid engine damage. Refer to "Maintaining Your Vehicle/Maintenance Procedures/ Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter" in this manual.

4. Turn the ignition switch to START and crank the engine. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

CAUTION!

Do not crank engine for more than 15 seconds at a time or starter motor damage may result. Turn the ignition switch to OFF and wait at least two minutes for the starter to cool before repeating start procedure.

5. When the engine starts, release the key fob.

6. Check to see that there is oil pressure.

7. Release the parking brake.

Starting Procedure – Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 66°F (19°C)

NOTE: The temperature displayed on the overhead console (if equipped) does not necessarily reflect the engine manifold air temperature. When engine temperatures fall below 66°F (19°C) the "Wait To Start Light" will remain on indicating the intake manifold heater system is active.

Follow the steps in the "Normal Starting" procedure except:

1. The "Wait To Start Light" will remain on for a period of time (length of time depends on engine temperature).

CAUTION!

If the "Water in Fuel Indicator Light" remains on, DO NOT START engine before you drain the water from the fuel filter to avoid engine damage. Refer to "Maintaining Your Vehicle/Maintenance Procedures/ Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter" in this manual.

2. After the "Wait To Start Light" goes off, turn the ignition switch to START. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

CAUTION!

Do not crank engine for more than 15 seconds at a time or starter motor damage may result. Turn the ignition switch to OFF and wait at least two minutes for the starter to cool before repeating start procedure.

3. After engine start-up, check to see that there is oil pressure.

4. Allow the engine to idle about three minutes until the manifold heaters have completed the post-heat cycle.

5. Release the parking brake and drive.

NOTE:

- Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1,000 RPM at low coolant temperatures to improve engine warm-up.
- If the engine stalls, or if the ignition switch is left ON for more than two minutes after the "Wait To Start Light" goes out, reset the grid heaters by turning the ignition switch to OFF for at least five seconds and then back ON. Repeat steps 1 through 5 of "Starting Procedure — Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 66°F (19°C)."

Starting Procedure – Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 0°F (-18°C)

In extremely cold weather below 0°F (-18°C) it may be beneficial to cycle the manifold heaters twice before attempting to start the engine. This can be accomplished by turning the ignition OFF for at least five seconds and then back ON after the "Wait To Start Light" has turned off, but before the engine is started. However, excessive cycling of the manifold heaters will result in damage to the heater elements or reduced battery voltage.

NOTE: If multiple pre-heat cycles are used before starting, additional engine run time may be required to maintain battery state of charge at a satisfactory level.

1. If the engine stalls after the initial start, the ignition must be turned to the OFF position for at least five seconds and then to the ON position to recycle the manifold heaters.

NOTE: Excessive white smoke and poor engine performance will result if manifold heaters are not recycled.

2. Heat generated by the manifold heaters dissipates rapidly in a cold engine. If more than two minutes pass between the time the "Wait To Start Light" turns off and the engine is started, recycle the manifold heaters by turning the ignition OFF for at least five seconds and then back ON.

3. If the vehicle is driven and vehicle speed exceeds 19 mph (31 km/h) before the manifold heater post-heat (after start) cycle is complete, the manifold heaters will shut off.

4. If the engine is started before the "Wait To Start Light" turns off, the preheat cycle will turn off.

5. If the engine is cranked for more than 10 seconds, the post-heat cycle will turn off.

NOTE:

- Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1, 000 RPM at low coolant temperatures to improve engine warm-up.
- When a diesel engine is allowed to run out of fuel or the fuel gels at low temperatures, air is pulled into the fuel system. If your engine has run out of fuel, refer to "Maintaining Your Vehicle/Maintenance Procedures/ Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel" in this manual.

Starting Fluids

WARNING!

Starting fluids or flammable liquids are never to be used in the Cummins® diesel engine (see Warning label). Never pour diesel fuel, flammable liquid, starting fluids (ether) into the air cleaner canister, air intake piping, or turbocharger inlet in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in a flash fire and explosion causing serious personal injury and engine damage.

The engine is equipped with an automatic electric air preheating system. If the instructions in this manual are followed, the engine should start in all conditions.

WARNING!

Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.

NORMAL OPERATION – DIESEL ENGINE

Observe the following when the engine is operating.

- All message center lights are off.
- Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is off.
- Engine oil pressure is above 10 psi (69 kPa) at idle.
- Voltmeter operation:
  - The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the

engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.

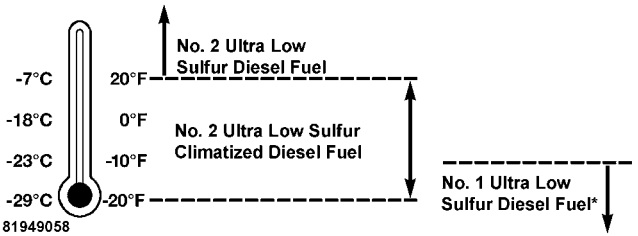
- The cycling action will cause temporary dimming of the headlamps, interior lamps, and also a noticeable reduction in blower motor speed.

Cold Weather Precautions

Operation in ambient temperature below 32°F (0°C) may require special considerations. The following charts suggest these options:

Fuel Operating Range

NOTE: Use "Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuels" **ONLY.**



*No. 1 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel should only be used where extended arctic conditions (-10°F/-23°C) exist.

NOTE:

- Use of Climatized Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel or Number 1 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel results in a noticeable decrease in fuel economy.
- Climatized Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel is a blend of Number 2 Ultra Low Sulfur and Number 1 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuels which reduces the temperature at which wax crystals form in fuel.

- The engine requires the use of **"Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel"**. Use of incorrect fuel could result in engine and exhaust system damage. Refer to" Starting and Operating/Fuel Requirements" in this manual for more information.

Engine Oil Usage
Refer to "Maintaining Your Vehicle/Maintenance Procedures" in this manual for the correct engine oil viscosity.

Winter Front Usage
If a winter front or cold weather cover is to be used, a percentage of the total grille opening area must be left uncovered to provide sufficient air flow to the charge air cooler and automatic transmission oil cooler. The percentage of opening must be increased with the increasing ambient air temperature and/or engine load. If the cooling fan can be heard cycling frequently, increase the size of the opening in the winter front. A suitable cold weather cover is available from your MOPAR® dealer.

Battery Blanket Usage
A battery loses 60% of its cranking power as the battery temperature decreases to 0°F (-18°C). For the same decrease in temperature, the engine requires twice as much power to crank at the same RPM. The use of 120 VAC powered battery blankets will greatly increase starting capability at low temperatures. Suitable battery blankets are available from your authorized MOPAR® dealer.

Engine Warm-Up
Avoid full throttle operation when the engine is cold. When starting a cold engine, bring the engine up to operating speed slowly to allow the oil pressure to stabilize as the engine warms up.

NOTE: High-speed, no-load running of a cold engine can result in excessive white smoke and poor engine performance. No-load engine speeds should be kept under 1,200 RPM during the warm-up period, especially in cold ambient temperature conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a turbo speed limiter, this feature limits the engine speed to 1,200 RPM when engine coolant temperatures are below 70°F (21°C). This feature is designed to protect the turbo charger from damage and will only operate in PARK or NEUTRAL.

If temperatures are below 32°F (0°C), operate the engine at moderate speeds for five minutes before full loads are applied.

NOTE:

- If ambient temperatures are low and the coolant temperature is below 180°F (82°C), the engine idle speed will slowly increase to 1,000 RPM after two minutes of idle, if the following conditions are met:
- foot is off brake pedal and throttle pedal
- automatic transmission is in PARK
- vehicle speed is zero
- Applying the throttle will cancel fast idle
- If the engine is equipped with an exhaust brake, operating the exhaust brake at idle will greatly improve warm up rate and will help keep the engine close to operating temperature during extended idle.

Engine Idling

Avoid prolonged idling, long periods of idling may be harmful to your engine because combustion chamber temperatures can drop so low that the fuel may not burn completely. Incomplete combustion allows carbon and varnish to form on piston rings, engine valves, and injector nozzles. Also, the unburned fuel can enter the crankcase, diluting the oil and causing rapid wear to the engine.

If the engine is allowed to idle, under some conditions the idle speed may increase to 900 RPM then return to normal idle speed. This is normal operation.

NOTE: For EVIC messages related to the vehicle's exhaust system, refer to "Maintaining Your Vehicle/ Maintenance Procedures/Intervention Regeneration Strategy — EVIC Message Process Flow" in this manual.

Idle-Up Feature — Automatic Transmission Only

The optional driver-controlled high idle speed will help increase cylinder temperatures and provide additional cab heat, however, may still cause the exhaust aftertreatment system to not properly regenerate. Extended periods of idle time should be avoided.

The Idle-Up feature uses the speed control switches to increase engine idle speed and quickly warm the vehicle's interior.

1. With the transmission in PARK, the parking brake applied, and the engine running, press the speed control switch to the ON position, then press the SET switch.

2. The engine RPM will go up to 1100 RPM. To increase the RPM, press and hold the ACCEL/RESUME switch and the idle speed will increase to approximately 1500 RPM. To decrease the RPM, press and hold the DECEL switch and the idle speed will decrease to approximately 1100 RPM.

3. To cancel the Idle–Up feature, either press the CANCEL switch, press the ON/OFF switch, or press the brake pedal.

Stopping The Engine

Idle the engine a few minutes before routine shutdown. After full load operation, idle the engine three to five minutes before shutting it down. This idle period will allow the lubricating oil and coolant to carry excess heat away from the combustion chamber, bearings, internal components, and turbocharger. This is especially important for turbocharged, charge air-cooled engines.

NOTE:

- During engine shut down on vehicles equipped with manual transmissions, it is normal for the diesel engine to resonate heavily for a moment during engine shut off. When the engine is connected to a manual transmission, this resonance causes load gear rattle from the transmission. This is commonly referred to as "shut down rattle." The manufacturer recommends performing engine shut down with the clutch pedal pushed to the floor (clutch disengaged). When engine shut down is performed in this manner the rattle is reduced (not eliminated).
- Refer to the following chart for proper engine shutdown.

Driving Condition	Load	Turbo-charger Temperature	Idle Time (min.) Before Engine Shutdown
Stop and Go	Empty	Cool	Less than One
Stop and Go	Medium		One
Highway Speeds	Medium	Warm	Two
City Traffic	Maximum GCWR		Three
Highway Speeds	Maximum GCWR		Four
Uphill Grade	Maximum GCWR	Hot	Five

Engine Speed Control

CAUTION!

Prevent overspeeding the engine going downhill. When descending steep grades, use a combination of gears and service brakes to control vehicle/engine speed. Overspeed can cause severe engine damage.

Operating Precautions

Avoid Overheating The Engine

The temperature of the engine coolant (antifreeze) (a mixture of 50% ethylene-glycol and 50% water) must not exceed the normal range of the temperature gauge 240°F (116°C) with a 16 psi (110 kPa) radiator cap.

Usually the engine coolant (antifreeze) temperature indicated during operation will be to the left of center in the normal range of the gauge.

Avoid Low Coolant Temperature Operation

Continual operation at low engine coolant (antifreeze) temperature below the normal range on the gauge 140°F (60°C) can be harmful to the engine. Low engine coolant (antifreeze) temperature can cause incomplete combustion which allows carbon and varnish to form on piston rings and injector nozzles. Also, the unburned fuel can enter the crankcase, diluting the lubricating oil and causing rapid wear to the engine.

Cooling System Tips – Automatic Transmission

To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating in high ambient temperature conditions, take the following actions:

- *City Driving —*

When stopped, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and increase engine idle speed.

- *Highway Driving —*

Reduce your speed.

- *Up Steep Hills —*

Select a lower transmission gear, but try and keep the torque converter clutch engaged.

- *Air Conditioning —*

Turn it off temporarily.

Do Not Operate The Engine With Low Oil Pressure

When the engine is at normal operating temperature, the minimum oil pressures required are:

Idle 700 to 800 RPM . . . . . 10 psi (69 kPa)
Full speed and load . . . . . 30 psi (207 kPa)

CAUTION!

If oil pressure falls to less than normal readings, shut the engine off immediately. Failure to do so could result in immediate and severe engine damage.

Do Not Operate The Engine With Failed Parts

Practically all failures give some warning before the parts fail. Be on the alert for changes in performance, sounds, and visual evidence that the engine requires service. Some important clues are:

- engine misfiring or vibrating severely
- sudden loss of power
- unusual engine noises
- fuel, oil or coolant leaks
- sudden change, outside the normal operating range, in the engine operating temperature
- excessive smoke
- oil pressure drop

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED

The engine block heater warms engine coolant and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the heater cord to a ground-fault interrupter protected 110–115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

The engine block heater cord is routed under the hood to the right side and can be located just behind the grille near the headlamp.

NOTE: The engine block heater cord is a factory installed option. If your vehicle is not equipped, heater cords are available from your authorized MOPAR® dealer.

The block heater must be plugged in at least one hour to have an adequate warming effect on the coolant.

WARNING!

Remember to disconnect the cord before driving. Damage to the 110–115 Volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.

NOTE: The block heater will require 110 Volts AC and 6.5 Amps to activate the heater element.

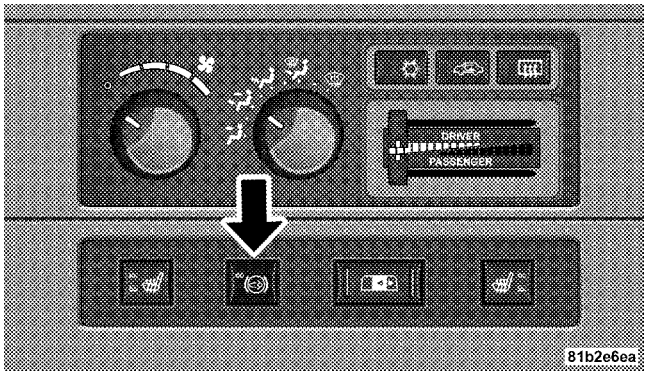
Block Heater Usage

For ambient temperatures below 0°F (-18°C), engine block heater usage is recommended.

For ambient temperatures below –20°F (-29°C), engine block heater usage is required.

DIESEL EXHAUST BRAKE (ENGINE BRAKING)

The exhaust brake feature will only function when the driver turns the exhaust brake switch to the ON position.



Exhaust Brake Switch

Once the switch is in the ON position and the vehicle is moving faster than 5 mph (8 km/h); the exhaust brake will automatically operate when the driver removes pressure from the accelerator pedal. Exhaust braking is most effective when the engine RPM is higher. The automatic transmission has been programmed to downshift more aggressively when the exhaust brake is enabled to increase brake performance.

CAUTION!

Use of aftermarket exhaust brakes is not recommended and could lead to engine damage

WARNING!

Do not use the exhaust brake feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

NOTE: For optimum braking power it is recommended to use the exhaust brake while in TOW/HAUL mode.

The purpose of the exhaust brake (engine braking) feature is to supply negative (braking) torque to the engine. Typically, the engine braking is used for, but not limited to, vehicle towing applications where vehicle braking can be achieved by the internal engine power, thereby sparing the mechanical brakes of the vehicle.

Benefits of the exhaust brake are:

- vehicle driving control
- reduced brake fade
- longer brake life
- faster cab warm-up.

The exhaust brake feature can also be used to reduce the engine warm up time. To use the exhaust brake as a warm-up device, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 mph (8 km/h), the exhaust brake switch must be in the ON position, and the coolant temperature must below 180°F (82°C) and ambient temperature below 60°F (16°C).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION — IF EQUIPPED

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- **Shift into PARK only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **Shift into or out of REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop and the engine is at idle speed.**
- **Do not shift from REVERSE, PARK, or NEUTRAL into any forward gear when the engine is above idle speed.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! (Continued)

- **Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly on the brake pedal.**

WARNING!

It is dangerous to move the shift lever out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

Automatic Transmission (Six-Speed AS68RC)

The shift lever display, located in the instrument panel cluster, indicates the transmission gear range (the selector is illuminated for night driving). The shift lever is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must press the brake pedal, to pull the shift lever out of PARK position (Brake Interlock System). To drive, move the shift lever from PARK or NEUTRAL to the desired drive position. Pull the shift lever toward you when shifting into REVERSE, SECOND, FIRST or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK.

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL position into another gear range.

PARK

This gear position supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range. Always apply parking brake first,

then place the shift lever in PARK position. On four-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position!

WARNING!

- **Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.**
- **Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in PARK. Check by trying to move the shift lever back and forth without first pulling it toward you after you have set it in PARK. Make sure it is in PARK before leaving the vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **It is dangerous to move the shift lever out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.**

REVERSE

Use this range only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

NEUTRAL

Shift to NEUTRAL when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Set the parking brake if you must leave the vehicle.

DRIVE
This position provides all forward gears, including fourth gear direct and fifth or sixth (if equipped) gear overdrive (refer to Overdrive Operation in this section). Use this range for most city and highway driving.

THIRD
Use this position for driving in slight heavy city traffic or on mountain roads where more precise speed control is desirable. Use it also when climbing long grades, and for engine braking when descending moderately steep grades. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h) in this range.

SECOND
Use this position for driving in more severe conditions and lower speeds than third gear. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h) in this range.

FIRST
Use this position for driving up very steep hills and for engine braking at low speeds 12 mph (19 km/h) or less when going downhill. To prevent excessive engine speed, do not exceed 12 mph (19 km/h) in this range.

NOTE: Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle in second or first gear in high ambient temperatures as torque converter slip can impose significant additional heat load on the cooling system.

5

Overdrive Operation
The Overdrive automatic transmission contains an electronically controlled fifth and sixth (if equipped) speed (Overdrive). The transmission will automatically shift from Drive to Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- the transmission selector is in DRIVE;

- the engine coolant has reached normal operating temperature;
- vehicle speed is above approximately 38 mph (61 km/h) for fifth gear and 50 mph (80 km/h) for sixth gear;
- the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" switch has not been activated;
- transmission has reached normal operating temperature.

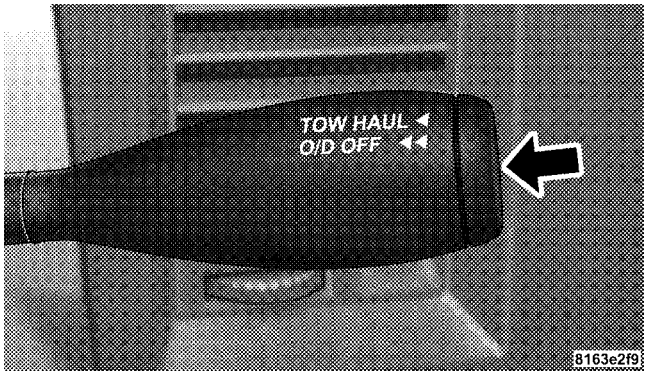
NOTE: If the vehicle is started in extremely cold temperatures, the transmission shift schedule initially restricts transmission operation in forward gear ranges to third gear until the transmission fluid temperature rises to a suitable level. During this condition, the ability of the vehicle to accelerate under heavily loaded conditions may be reduced. Refer to the "Note" under "Torque Converter Clutch" in this section.

If the transmission temperature gets extremely hot, the transmission will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. If the transmission temperature becomes hot enough the TRANS TEMP light may illuminate and the transmission may downshift out of Overdrive until the transmission cools down. After cooldown, the transmission will resume normal operation.

The transmission will downshift from Overdrive to Drive if the accelerator pedal is fully pressed at vehicle speeds above approximately 35 to 40 mph (57 to 65 km/h) for sixth to fifth and 22 to 25 mph (36 to 40 km/h) for fifth to fourth.

When To Use "TOW HAUL" and "O/D OFF" Modes

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" switch once to select TOW HAUL. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in "TOW HAUL" mode, sixth gear (if equipped) is disabled and 2-3 and 3-4 and 4–5 shift patterns are modified. Shifts into Overdrive (fifth gear) are allowed during steady cruise (for improved fuel economy). Pressing the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" switch a second time to select O/D OFF will disable fifth and sixth gear completely, which should eliminate any excessive transmission shifting.



Tow Haul O/D Off Switch

The "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" light will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate when the switch has been activated. Pressing the switch a third time restores normal operation. If the "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" modes are desired, the switch must be pressed each time the engine is started.

WARNING!

Do not use the TOW HAUL feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

When To Lock Out Overdrive

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent 6–5–6 or 5–4–5 transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW HAUL" switch. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting.

Torque Converter Clutch

A feature designed to improve fuel economy has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in high gear. When the vehicle speed drops or during acceleration when the transmission downshifts to 1st gear, the clutch automatically disengages.

NOTE:

- The torque converter clutch will not engage until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1-3 miles (1.6 - 4.8 km) of driving]. Because the engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting into Overdrive when cold. This is normal. Pressing the "TOW HAUL" switch when the transmission is sufficiently warm will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of Overdrive.

- If the vehicle has not been driven in several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds of shifting from PARK into any other gear position.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION — IF EQUIPPED

WARNING!

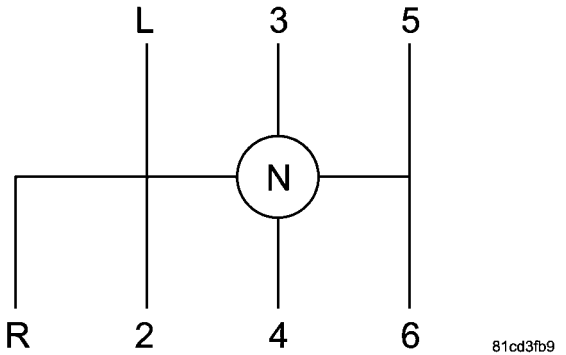
You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended without having the parking brake fully applied. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle, especially on an incline.

CAUTION!

Never drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, or attempt to hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially engaged, as this will cause abnormal wear on the clutch.

NOTE: During cold weather, you may experience increased effort in shifting until the transmission fluid warms up. This is normal.

Shifting



Shift Pattern

Truck models with manual transmission are equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. The clutch pedal must be fully pressed to start the vehicle.

Fully press the clutch pedal before shifting gears. As you release the clutch pedal, lightly press the accelerator pedal.

This transmission has a “creeper” first gear (L=low) which should be used to start from a standing position when carrying a payload or towing a trailer. Damage to the clutch can result from starting in second or third gear with a loaded vehicle. An unloaded vehicle may be launched in second gear. Use each gear in numerical order – do not skip a gear.

You should use first gear when starting from a standing position if under heavy load or when pulling a trailer.

Recommended Vehicle Shift Speeds

To utilize your manual transmission efficiently for both fuel economy and performance, it should be upshifted as listed in recommended shift speed chart. Shift at the

vehicle speeds listed for acceleration. When heavily loaded or pulling a trailer these recommended up-shift speeds may not apply.

Maximum Recommended Up-shift Speeds

Gear Selection	L to 2	2 to 3	3 to 4	4 to 5	5 to 6
Maximum Speed	7 mph (11 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)	40 mph (64 km/h)	45 mph (72 km/h)

Downshifting

Moving from a high gear down to a lower gear is recommended to preserve brakes when driving down steep hills. In addition, downshifting at the right time provides better acceleration when you desire to resume speed. Downshift progressively. Do not skip gears to avoid overspeeding the engine and clutch.

WARNING!

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid.

CAUTION!

When descending a hill, be very careful to downshift one gear at a time to prevent overspeeding the engine which can cause valve damage, and/or clutch disc damage even if the clutch pedal is pressed.

Maximum Recommended Downshift Speeds

CAUTION!

Failure to follow the recommended downshifting speeds may cause the engine to overspeed and/or damage the clutch disc even if the clutch pedal is pressed.

Maximum Recommended Downshifting Speeds

Gear Selection	6 to 5	5 to 4	4 to 3	3 to 2	2 to L
Maximum Speed	68 mph (109 km/h)	50 mph (80 km/h)	32 mph (51 km/h)	19 mph (31 km/h)	10 mph (16 km/h)

Reverse Shifting

To shift into REVERSE (R), bring the vehicle to a complete stop. Press the clutch and pause briefly to allow the gear train to stop rotating. Beginning from the NEUTRAL (N) position, move the shift lever in one quick smooth motion straight across and into the REVERSE (R) area (the driver will feel a firm "click" as the shifter passes the "knock-over"). Complete the shift by pulling the shift lever into REVERSE (R).

The "knock-over" prevents the driver from accidentally entering the REVERSE (R) shift area and warns the driver that they are about to shift the transmission into REVERSE (R). Due to this feature, a slow shift to REVERSE (R) can be perceived as a high shift effort.

To shift out of REVERSE bring the vehicle to a complete stop and press the clutch. Shifting out of REVERSE prior to a complete stop may cause high shift effort.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED

Manually Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions

The transfer case provides four mode positions.

- Two-wheel drive high range (2H)
- Four-wheel drive high range (4H)
- Neutral (N)
- Four-wheel drive low range (4L)

This transfer case is intended to be driven in the 2H position for normal street and highway conditions such as dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the 4H and 4L positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by simply moving the shift lever to the desired positions. The 4H and 4L positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4H and 4L positions on dry, hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The "Transfer Case Position Indicator Light" in the instrument cluster will alert the driver that the vehicle is in four-wheel drive and that the front and rear driveshafts are locked together. This light will illuminate when the transfer case is shifted into either the 4H or 4L position. There is no light for the 2H or NEUTRAL positions.

When operating your vehicle in 4L, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2H or 4H positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and can cause damage to the transfer case.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. The transfer case is not equipped with a synchronizer and therefore the front and rear driveshaft speeds must be equal for the shift to take place. Shifting while only the front or rear wheels are spinning can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

NOTE: Delayed shifts out of four-wheel drive may be experienced due to uneven tire wear, low or uneven tire pressures, excessive vehicle loading, or cold temperatures.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

2H

Rear Wheel Drive High Range - This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry hard surfaced roads.

4H

Four-Wheel Drive High Range - This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

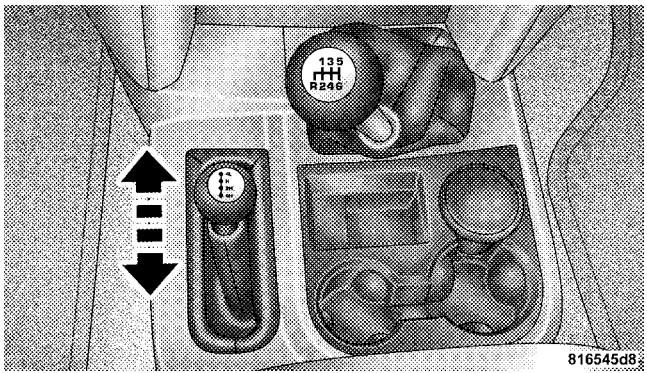
N

Neutral - This range disengages the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in this section.

4L

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range - This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Shifting Procedure - Manually Shifted Transfer Case



Manual Transfer Case Shifter

2H ⇔ 4H

Shifting between 2H and 4H can be made with the vehicle stopped or in motion. If the vehicle is in motion, shifts can be made up to 55 mph (88 km/h). With the

vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after completing the shift. Apply a constant force when shifting the transfer case lever.

2H or 4H ⇔ 4L

With the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transmission into NEUTRAL. While the vehicle is coasting at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transfer case lever firmly to the desired position. Do not pause in transfer case NEUTRAL.

NOTE:

- Pausing in transfer case NEUTRAL in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission may require shutting the engine OFF to avoid gear clash while completing the shift. If difficulty occurs, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL, hold foot on brake, and turn the engine OFF. Make shift to the desired mode.
- Shifting into or out of 4L is possible with the vehicle completely stopped, however difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h). Avoid attempting to engage or disengage 4L with the vehicle moving faster than 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
- Do not attempt to shift into or from 4L while the transmission is in gear.

Transfer Case Position Indicator Light

The "Transfer Case Position Indicator Light" in the instrument cluster is used to alert the driver that the front axle is fully engaged and all four wheels are driving.

POWER TAKE OFF OPERATION – IF EQUIPPED

This vehicle when equipped with either the automatic six-speed or manual G-56 six-speed transmissions, will

allow for an aftermarket upfit with a transmission driven PTO (power take off). The customer will have the ability to operate the PTO in either a "stationary" or "mobile" mode. The vehicles will be factory set to the "stationary" mode. In order to select the "mobile" mode an authorized dealership is required to modify the vehicle's settings using their proprietary authorized dealer service tool.

Stationary Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Be in PARK position (vehicles equipped with automatic transmission)
- Upfitter provider (on/off) switch has been activated
- Parking brake applied (vehicles equipped with manual transmission)
- Vehicle engine must be running
- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits

The customer has the choice to operate the PTO by utilizing the cruise control switches or by utilizing a remote control (provided by the PTO supplier). To operate the feature using the cruise control switches, the customer must first activate the upfitter-provided on/off switch. Next, the cruise control ON switch is selected. Following this step the SET switch must be depressed. The vehicle is now in the PTO mode and is ready for use. In order to increase or decrease the engine idle speed, to optimize the PTO function, the RESUME/ACCEL and DECEL cruise switches can be used respectively. To disengage PTO operation and return to "standard vehicle operation" simply turn the upfitter-provided on/off switch to the OFF position or press the CANCEL cruise switch.

To operate the PTO via a remote switch the customer must make sure the above conditions are met. It is vital for proper operation that the PTO and remote have been installed correctly, paying special attention to ensure the vehicle provided wiring has been connected properly. This is the responsibility of the installer of the PTO and switches/remote system. It is the responsibility of the PTO manufacturer to ensure that their electrical (switches and remote) system is compatible with the vehicle's electrical architecture and software functionality.

Mobile Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Authorized dealer-selected "mobile" mode activated via authorized dealer proprietary service tool
- Upfitter-provided (on/off) switch has been activated
- Vehicle must be in PARK or DRIVE position (vehicles equipped with automatic transmission)
- Parking brake must not be applied
- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present
- Vehicle engine must be running
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits

The customer may choose to use the PTO while the vehicle is moving. To do so, the PTO function must be activated prior to taking the vehicle out of PARK. This is accomplished by activating the upfitter-provided PTO on/off switch. At this point, the customer may place the vehicle in a forward or reverse gear and have PTO operation. To disengage PTO operation and return to "standard vehicle operation" simply turn the upfitter-provided on/off switch to the OFF position.

NOTE: For application specific information with respect to PTO and pump requirements and additional vehicle information (wiring schematics, preset idle values, engine speed limits, and vehicle hardware and software requirements) please refer to the Dodge Body Builders Guide by accessing **"www.dodge.com/bodybuilder"** and choosing the appropriate links.

Power Take Off – Aftermarket Installation

If you did not order the PTO (Power Take Off) Prep Package from the factory and want to convert your vehicle, refer to the Body Builders Guide at **www.dodge.com/bodybuilder** or contact the manufacturer directly at **dodgebbg@chrysler.com** (e-mail), or 866–205–4102 (toll free).

LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL

The limited-slip differential provides additional traction on snow, ice, mud, sand and gravel, particularly when there is a difference between the traction characteristics of the surface under the right and left rear wheels. During normal driving and cornering, the limited-slip unit performs similarly to a conventional differential. On slippery surfaces, however, the differential delivers more of the driving effort to the rear wheel having the better traction.

The limited-slip differential is especially helpful during slippery driving conditions. With both rear wheels on a slippery surface, a slight application of the accelerator will supply maximum traction. When starting with only one rear wheel on an excessively slippery surface, slight momentary application of the parking brake may be necessary to gain maximum traction.

WARNING!

On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground since the vehicle may drive through the rear wheel remaining on the ground. You could lose control of the vehicle.

Care should be taken to avoid sudden accelerations when both rear wheels are on a slippery surface. This could cause both rear wheels to spin, and allow the vehicle to slide sideways on the crowned surface of a road or in a turn.

DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES

When driving on wet or slushy roads, it is possible for a wedge of water to build up between the tire and road surface. This is known as hydroplaning and may cause partial or complete loss of vehicle control and stopping ability. To reduce this possibility, the following precautions should be observed:

1. Slow down during rainstorms or when roads are slushy.
2. Slow down if the road has standing water or puddles.
3. Replace tires when tread wear indicators first become visible.
4. Keep tires properly inflated.
5. Maintain sufficient distance between your vehicle and the car in front of you to avoid a collision in a sudden stop.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

Driving through water more than a few inches/centimeters deep will require extra caution to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle.

Flowing/Rising Water

WARNING!

Do not drive on or across a road or path where water is flowing and/or rising (as in storm run-off). Flowing water can wear away the road or path's surface and cause your vehicle to sink into deeper water. Furthermore, flowing and/or rising water can carry your vehicle away swiftly. Failure to follow this warning may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

Shallow Standing Water

Although your vehicle is capable of driving through shallow standing water, consider the following Caution and Warning before doing so.

CAUTION!

- **Always check the depth of the standing water before driving through it. Never drive through standing water that is deeper than the bottom of the tire rims mounted on the vehicle.**
- **Determine the condition of the road or the path that is under water and if there are any obstacles in the way before driving through the standing water.**
- **Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water. This will minimize wave effects.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! (Continued)

- **Driving through standing water may cause damage to your vehicle's drivetrain components. Always inspect your vehicle's fluids (i.e., engine oil, transmission/transaxle, axle, etc.) for signs of contamination (i.e., fluid that is milky or foamy in appearance) after driving through standing water. Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any fluid appears contaminated, as this may result in further damage. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**
- **Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and cause serious internal damage to the engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

WARNING!

- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's traction capabilities. Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water.**
- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's braking capabilities, which increases stopping distances. Therefore, after driving through standing water, drive slowly and lightly press on the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes.**
- **Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and leave you stranded.**
- **Failure to follow these warnings may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.**

POWER STEERING

The standard power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for some reason the power assist is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions, you will observe a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at very low vehicle speeds and during parking maneuvers.

NOTE:

- Increased noise levels at the end of the steering wheel travel are considered normal and do not indicate that there is a problem with the power steering system.
- Upon initial start-up in cold weather, the power steering pump may make noise for a short amount of time. This is due to the cold, thick fluid in the steering system. This noise should be considered normal, and it does not in any way damage the steering system.

WARNING!

Continued operation with reduced power steering assist could pose a safety risk to yourself and others. Service should be obtained as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged operation of the steering system at the end of the steering wheel travel will increase the steering fluid temperature and it should be avoided when possible. Damage to the power steering pump may occur.

Power Steering Fluid Check

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Coordinate inspection efforts through an authorized dealer.

CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your power steering system as the chemicals can damage your power steering components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

WARNING!

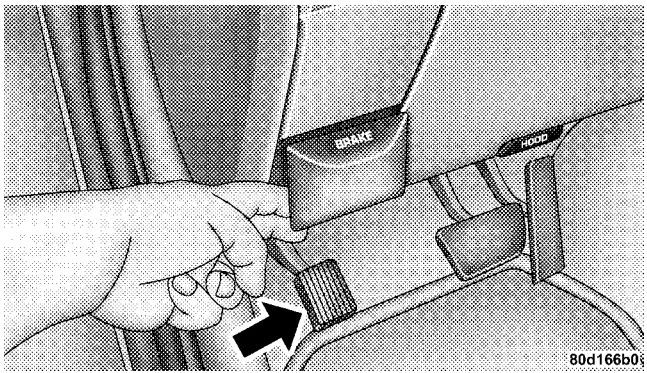
Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to ensure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturer's recommended power steering fluid.

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in Section 7 for the correct fluid type.

PARKING BRAKE

The foot-operated parking brake is positioned below the lower left corner of the instrument panel. To release the parking brake, pull the parking brake release handle.

NOTE: The "Brake Warning Light" will come on and flash to indicate that the parking brake is applied. You must be sure that the parking brake is fully applied before leaving the vehicle.



Parking Brake

Be sure the parking brake is firmly set when parked and the shift lever is in the PARK position. When parking on a hill, you should apply the parking brake before placing the shift lever in PARK, otherwise, the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the shift lever out of PARK.

WARNING!

- **Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also be certain to leave the transmission in PARK. Failure to do so may allow the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Do not leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

(Continued)

5

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving, failure to do so can lead to brake problems due to excessive heating of the rear brakes.**

When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

The parking brake should always be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

BRAKE SYSTEM

If power assist is lost for any reason (for example, repeated brake applications with the engine off), the brakes will still function. However, you will experience a substantial increase in braking effort to stop the vehicle. If either the front or rear hydraulic systems lose normal capability, the remaining system will still function with some loss of overall braking effectiveness. This will be evident by increased pedal travel during application, greater pedal force required to slow or stop, and activation of the BRAKE warning light and the ABS light (if equipped) during brake use.

Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System

WARNING!

- **Anti-Lock Brake Systems (ABS) contain sophisticated electronic equipment. It may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be performed by qualified professionals.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **ABS cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.**
- **The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of an ABS equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

This ABS is designed to aid the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse braking conditions. The system operates with a separate computer to modulate hydraulic pressure to prevent wheel lockup and help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces.

The system's pump motor runs during an ABS stop to provide regulated hydraulic pressure. The pump motor makes a low humming noise during operation. This is normal.

When you are in a severe braking condition involving use of the ABS, you will experience some pedal drop as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. This is the result of the system reverting to the base brake system and is normal.

Engagement of the ABS may be accompanied by a pulsing sensation in the brake pedal. You may also hear a clicking noise. These occurrences are normal, and indicate that the system is functioning.

ABS Warning Light

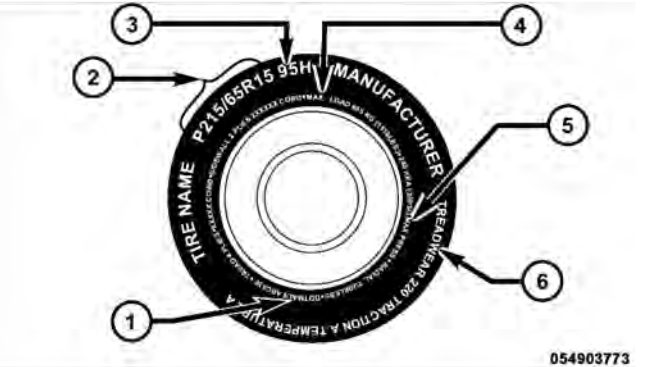
The ABS includes an amber warning light, located in the instrument cluster. When the light is illuminated, the ABS is not functioning. The system reverts to standard non-anti-lock brakes.

WARNING!

Pumping of the anti-lock brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to an accident. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.

TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION

Tire Markings



1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN)
2 — Size Designation
3 — Service Description
4 — Maximum Load
5 — Maximum Pressure
6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

NOTE:

- P (Passenger) - Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter "P" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European-Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter ″P″ is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) - Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters "LT" that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary spare tires are high-pressure compact spares designed for temporary emergency use only. Tires designed to this standard have the letter "T" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

Tire Sizing Chart

EXAMPLE:
Size Designation:
P = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards **"....blank...."** = Passenger car tire based on European design standards **LT** = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards **T** = Temporary spare tire **31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)
215 = Section width in millimeters (mm)
65 = Aspect ratio in percent (%) — Ratio of section height to section width of tire **10.5** = Section width in inches (in)
R = Construction code — "R" means radial construction —"D" means diagonal or bias construction
15 = Rim diameter in inches (in)

EXAMPLE:
Service Description:
95 = Load Index — A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry
H = Speed Symbol — A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions — The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)
Load Identification:
"....blank...." = Absence of any text on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire
Extra Load (XL) = Extra load (or reinforced) tire
Light Load = Light load tire
C, D, E = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure
Maximum Load — Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry
Maximum Pressure — Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire, however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

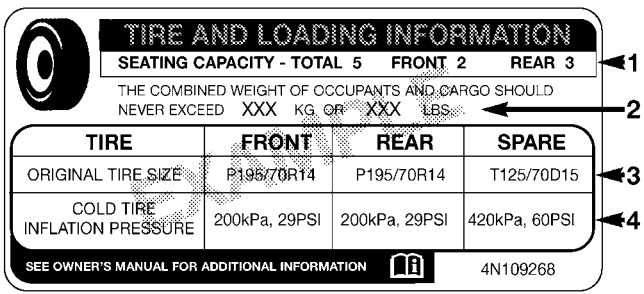
EXAMPLE:
DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301
DOT = Department of Transportation — This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use
MA = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)
L9 = Code representing the tire size (two digits)
ABCD = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)
03 = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) —03 means the 3rd week.
01 = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) —01 means the year 2001 — Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991

Tire Loading and Tire Pressure

Tire Placard Location

NOTE: The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar.

Tire and Loading Information Placard



811b5a9a

Tire and Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1) number of people that can be carried in the vehicle
2) total weight your vehicle can carry
3) tire size designed for your vehicle
4) cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard and in the "Vehicle Loading" section of this manual.

NOTE: Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWRs, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to "Vehicle Loading" in this section.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs or XXX kg" on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs or XXX kg" on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs or XXX kg.

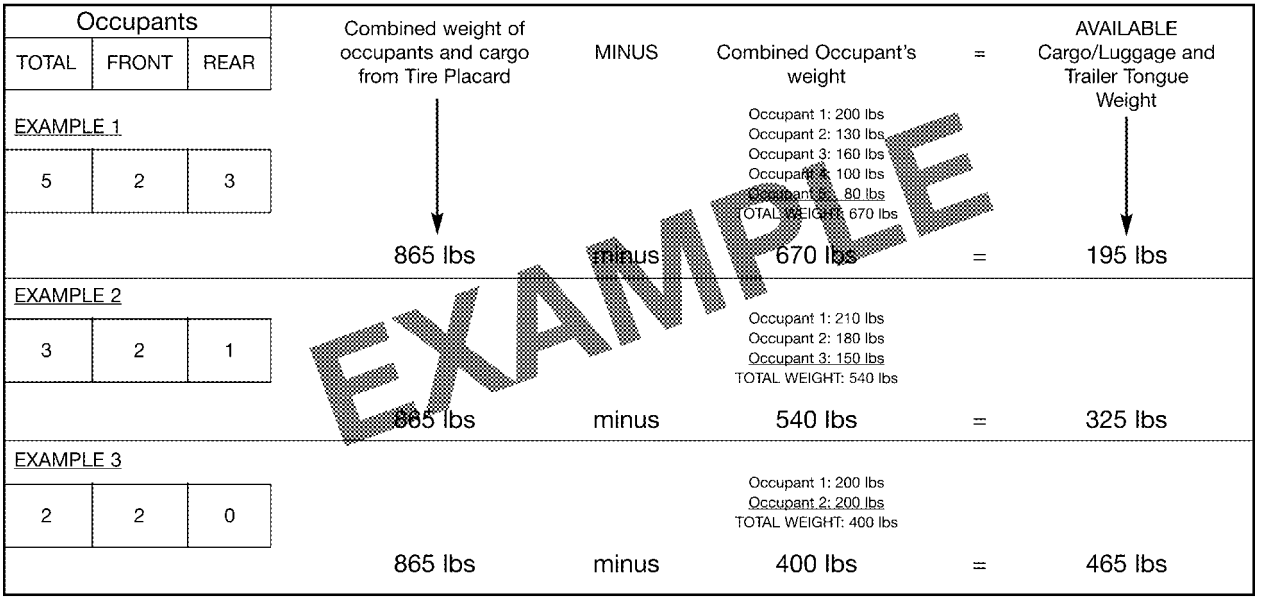
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs (635 kg) and there will be five 150 lb (68 kg) passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (295 kg) (since 5 x 150 = 750, and 1400 – 750 = 650 lbs [295 kg]).

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

NOTE:

- The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.
- For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).


Occupants
TOTAL
FRONT
REAR
Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard
MINUS
Combined Occupant's weight
=
AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight
EXAMPLE 1
5
2
3
Occupant 1: 200 lbs
Occupant 2: 130 lbs
Occupant 3: 160 lbs
Occupant 4: 100 lbs
Occupant 5: 80 lbs
TOTAL WEIGHT: 670 lbs
865 lbs
minus
670 lbs
=
195 lbs
EXAMPLE 2
3
2
1
Occupant 1: 210 lbs
Occupant 2: 180 lbs
Occupant 3: 150 lbs
TOTAL WEIGHT: 540 lbs
865 lbs
minus
540 lbs
=
325 lbs
EXAMPLE 3
2
2
0
Occupant 1: 200 lbs
Occupant 2: 200 lbs
TOTAL WEIGHT: 400 lbs
865 lbs
minus
400 lbs
=
465 lbs
EXAMPLE

811a4d11

WARNING!

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION

Tire Pressure

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Three primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

Safety

WARNING!

- **Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause accidents.**
- **Under-inflation increases tire flexing and can result in tire failure.**
- **Over-inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.**
- **Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.**
- **Over-inflated or under-inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.**
- **Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.**

Economy

Improper inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life resulting in a need for earlier tire replacement. Under-inflation also increases tire rolling resistance and results in higher fuel consumption.

Ride Comfort and Vehicle Stability

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side "B" Pillar.

Some vehicles may have Supplemental Tire Pressure Information for vehicle loads that are less than the maximum loaded vehicle condition. These pressure conditions will be found in the "Supplemental Tire Pressure Information" section of this manual.

The pressure should be checked and adjusted as well as inspecting for signs of tire wear or visible damage at least once a month. Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.

CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure." Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

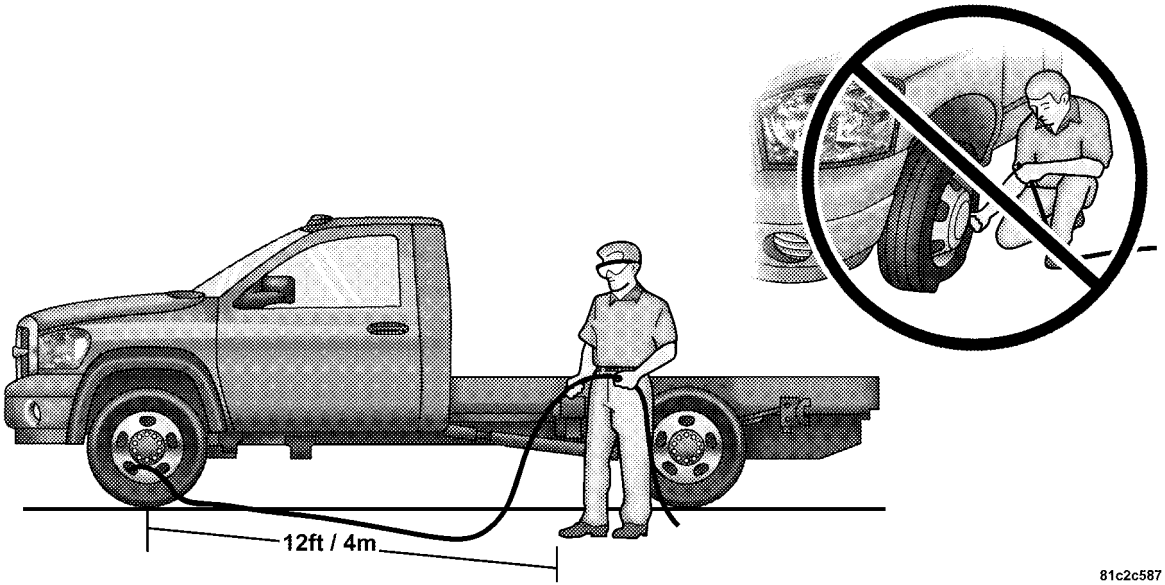
Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

Tire Inflation Pressure — 4500/5500 with Steel Carcass Ply Tires

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewall. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Adjusting tire pressure must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped accordingly.

Inflation Pressure Adjustment When Mounted to Vehicle

During procedures when adding tire inflation pressure, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.



4500/5500 Tire Inflation

When adjusting inflation pressure to a tire and wheel assembly mounted on a vehicle, use a Remote Mount Automatic Inflation Kit or see your authorized dealer.

NOTE: Never attempt to re-inflate a tire and wheel assembly which has been run flat or is extremely underinflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection.

Personnel trained, supervised, and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) should perform this work.

Inflation Pressure Adjustment When Not Mounted to Vehicle

When adjusting inflation pressure to a tire and wheel assembly not mounted on a vehicle, use a Remote Mount Automatic Inflation Kit and a Tire Inflation Cage or see your authorized dealer.

Tire Pressures for High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious accident resulting in serious injury or death. Don't drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Radial Ply Tires

WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause an accident resulting in serious injury or death. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four (or six, in case of trucks with dual rear wheels). Never combine them with other types of tires.

Cuts and punctures in radial tires are repairable only in the tread area because of sidewall flexing. Consult your authorized tire dealer for radial tire repairs.

Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck.

Refer to "Freeing A Stuck Vehicle" in Section 6 of this manual.

WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and don't let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.

1 — Worn Tire
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes 1/16 in (2 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced.

Many states have laws requiring tire replacement at this point.

Life of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style
- Tire pressure
- Distance driven

WARNING!

Tires and spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressure. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed (refer to the paragraph on "Tread Wear Indicators"). Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard for the size designation of your tire. The service description and load identification will be found on the original equipment tire. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle. We recommend that you contact your original equipment or an authorized tire dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability.

WARNING!

- **Do not use a tire, wheel size or rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control resulting in serious injury or death.**

CAUTION!

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION — IF EQUIPPED

A light load vehicle condition is defined as two passengers [150 lbs (68 kg) each] plus 200 lbs (91 kg) of cargo. Cold tire inflation pressures for a lightly loaded vehicle will be found on the face of the driver's door.

TIRE CHAINS

Use "Class U" chains or other traction aids that meet SAE Type "U" specifications.

NOTE: Chains must be the proper size for the vehicle, as recommended by the chain manufacturer.

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to your vehicle, tires or chains, observe the following precautions:

- **Because of limited chain clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only chains in good condition are used. Broken chains can cause serious vehicle damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could suggest chain breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the chain before further use.**
- **Install chains as tightly as possible and then retighten after driving about 1/2 mi (0.8 km).**
- **Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h).**
- **Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.**
- **Do not install tire chains on front wheels of 4x2 vehicles.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! (Continued)

- **Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.**
- **Observe the tire chain manufacturer's instructions on method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for usage. Always use the lower suggested operating speed of the chain manufacturer if different than the speed recommended by the manufacturer.**

These cautions apply to all chain traction devices, including link and cable (radial) chains.

Tire chain use is permitted only on the rear tires of your 4X2 trucks.

NOTE:

- The use of class "U" chains is permitted on the front and rear of 4X4 vehicles, trucks with dual rear wheels and LT235/80R17E tires.
- On 4X2 vehicles, class "U" snow chains are permitted on the rear wheels only of vehicles equipped with LT245/70R17, LT265/70R17, and LT235/80R17 size tires.
- On 4X4 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles, class "U" snow chains are permitted on the rear wheels only on vehicles equipped with LT265/70R17.

CAUTION!

Do not use tire chains on the 4X2 front wheels of SRW (Single Rear Wheels) equipped with LT245/70R17, LT265/70R17 tires or 4X4 front tires of vehicles equipped with LT265/70R17tires. There may not be adequate clearance for the chains and you are risking structural or body damage to your vehicle.

SNOW TIRES

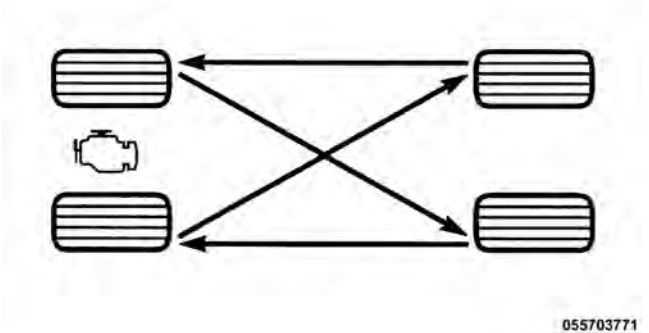
Snow tires should be of the same size and type construction as the front tires. Consult the manufacturer of the snow tire to determine any maximum vehicle speed requirement associated with the tire. These tires should always be operated at the vehicle maximum capacity inflation pressures under any load condition.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates, and develop irregular wear patterns. These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on On/Off Road type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow, and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

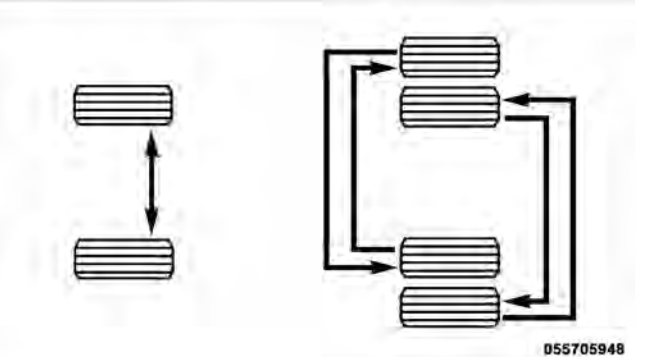
Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" in Section 8 of this manual for the proper maintenance intervals. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.



Tire Rotation

NOTE: On Canadian vehicles only, if your vehicle is equipped with All-Season type tires on the front and On/Off Road type tires mounted on the rear, do not use a front to back rotation pattern. Instead, rotate your tires side to side at the recommended intervals.

Dual Rear Wheels



Tire Rotation

The tires used on dual wheel assemblies should be matched for wear to prevent overloading one tire in a set. To check if tires are even, lay a straight edge across all four tires. The straight edge should touch all the tires.

CAUTION!

4500/5500 Dual Rear Tires have only one approved direction of rotation. This is to accommodate the asymmetrical design (tread pattern) of the On/Off road tire.

(Continued)

CAUTION! (Continued)

- **When replacing a flat, the spare tire may have to be remounted on the rim or installed at a different location to maintain the correct placement of the tire on the wheel relative to the tire/wheel position on the vehicle. For example, if the spare is used to replace an outer rear tire it will have to be re-mounted on the rim so that the wheel is dished inward. That way the tread design of asymmetrical tires will maintain proper position.**

ENGINE RUNAWAY

WARNING!

In case of engine runaway due to flammable fumes from gasoline spills or turbocharger oil leaks being sucked into the engine, do the following to help avoid personal injury and/or vehicle damage:

1. Shut off engine ignition switch.

2. Using a CO_2 or dry chemical type fire extinguisher, direct the spray from the fire extinguisher into the grille on the passenger side so that the spray enters the engine air intake.

The inlet for the engine air intake is located behind the passenger side headlamp and receives air through the grille.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Use good quality diesel fuel from a reputable supplier in your vehicle. Federal law requires that you must fuel this vehicle with Ultra Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (15 ppm Sulfur maximum) and prohibits the use of Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (500 ppm Sulfur maximum) to avoid damage to the emissions control system. For most year-round service, No. 2 diesel fuel meeting ASTM specification D-975 Grade S15 will provide good performance. If the vehicle is exposed to extreme cold (below 20°F or -7°C), or is required to operate at colder-than-normal conditions for prolonged periods, use climatized No. 2 diesel fuel or dilute the No. 2 diesel fuel with 50% No. 1 diesel fuel. This will provide better protection from fuel gelling or wax-plugging of the fuel filters.

WARNING!

Do not use alcohol or gasoline as a fuel blending agent. They can be unstable under certain conditions and hazardous or explosive when mixed with diesel fuel.

Diesel fuel is seldom completely free of water. To prevent fuel system trouble, drain the accumulated water from the **fuel/water separator using the fuel/water separator** drain provided. If you buy good quality fuel and follow the cold weather advice above, fuel conditioners should not be required in your vehicle. If available in your area, a high cetane "premium" diesel fuel may offer improved cold-starting and warm-up performance.

Fuel Specifications

The Cummins® diesel engine has been developed to take advantage of the high energy content and generally lower cost No. 2 Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuel or No. 2 Ultra Low Sulfur climatized diesel fuels. Experience has shown that it also operates on No. 1 Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuels or other fuels within specification.

NOTE:

- A maximum blend of 5% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-6751 may be used with your Cummins® diesel engine.
- In addition, commercially available fuel additives are not necessary for the proper operation of your Cummins® diesel engine.
- No. 1 Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuel should only be used where extended arctic conditions (-10°F or -23°C) exist.

ADDING FUEL

CAUTION!

To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling.

NOTE:

- When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.
- Tighten the gas cap until you hear a "clicking" sound. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened.
- Make sure that the gas cap is tightened each time the vehicle is refueled.

WARNING!

A fire may result if fuel is pumped into a portable container that is on a truck bed. You could be burned. Always place fuel containers on the ground while filling.

Fuel Filler Cap (Gas Cap)

If the gas cap is lost or damaged, be sure the replacement cap is for use with this vehicle.

CAUTION!

Damage to the fuel system or emission control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (gas cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system.

WARNING!

- **Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank filled.**
- **Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running.**

Avoid Using Contaminated Fuel

Fuel that is contaminated by water or dirt can cause severe damage to the engine fuel system. Proper maintenance of the engine fuel filter and fuel tank is essential. Refer to "Maintaining Your Vehicle/Maintenance Procedures" in this manual.

Bulk Fuel Storage

If you store quantities of fuel, good maintenance of the stored fuel is also essential. Fuel contaminated with water will promote the growth of "microbes." These microbes form "slime" that will clog fuel filters and lines. Drain condensation from the supply tank and change the line filter on a regular basis.

NOTE: When a diesel engine is allowed to run out of fuel, air is pulled into the fuel system.

If the vehicle will not start, refer to "Maintaining Your Vehicle/Maintenance Procedures/Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel" in this manual.

WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

VEHICLE LOADING

Certification Label

As required by National Highway Traffic Safety Administration regulations, your vehicle has a certification label affixed to the driver's side door or pillar.

This label contains the month and year of manufacture, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) front and rear, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). A Month-Day-Hour (MDH) number is included on this label and indicates the Month, Day and Hour of manufacture. The bar code that appears on the bottom of the label is your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems (GAWR). Total load must be limited so GVWR and front and rear GAWR are not exceeded.

Payload

The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck can carry, including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options and cargo.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle GAWR is determined by the components in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires or wheels). Heavier axles or suspension components sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability does not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

Tire Size
The tire size on the Label represents the actual tire size on your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

Rim Size
This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

Inflation Pressure
This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

Curb Weight
The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.

Loading
The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation.

The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to insure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the front or rear axles has been exceeded but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear or rear to front as appropriate until the specified weight limitations are met. Store the heavier items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distributions can have an adverse effect on the way your vehicle steers and handles and the way the brakes operate.

CAUTION!

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

TRAILER TOWING

In this section you will find safety tips and information on limits to the type of towing you can reasonably do with your vehicle. Before towing a trailer, carefully review this information to tow your load as efficiently and safely as possible.

To maintain warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

Common Towing Definitions

The following trailer towing related definitions will assist you in understanding the following information:

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle. This includes driver, passengers, cargo and tongue weight. The total load must be limited so that you do not exceed the GVWR.

Gross Trailer Weight (GTW)

The GTW is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its ″loaded and ready for operation″ condition. The recommended way to

measure GTW is to put your fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR)
The GCWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination.

NOTE: The GCWR rating includes a 150 lbs (68 kg) allowance for the presence of a driver.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)
The GAWR is the maximum capacity of the front and rear axles. Distribute the load over the front and rear axles evenly. Make sure that you do not exceed either front or rear GAWR.

WARNING!

It is important that you do not exceed the maximum front or rear GAWR. A dangerous driving condition can result if either rating is exceeded. You could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

Tongue Weight (TW)
The tongue weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch ball by the trailer is the tongue weight. In most cases it should not be less than 10% or more than 15% of the trailer load. You must consider this as part of the load on your vehicle.

Frontal Area
The frontal area is the maximum height and maximum width of the front of a trailer.

Trailer Sway Control

The trailer sway control is a telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue that typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

Weight-Carrying Hitch

A weight-carrying hitch supports the trailer tongue weight, just as if it were luggage located at a hitch ball or some other connecting point of the truck. These kind of hitches are the most popular on the market today and they are commonly used to tow small- and medium-sized trailers.

Weight-Distributing Hitch

A weight-distributing system works by applying leverage through spring (load) bars. They are typically used for heavier loads, to distribute trailer tongue weight to the tow vehicle's front axle and the trailer axle(s). When used in accordance with the manufacturers' directions, it provides for a more level ride, offering more consistent steering and brake control, thereby enhancing towing safety. The addition of a friction/hydraulic sway control also dampens sway caused by traffic and crosswinds and contributes positively to tow vehicle and trailer stability. Trailer sway control and a weight distributing (load equalizing) hitch are recommended for heavier Tongue Weights (TW) and may be required depending on Vehicle and Trailer configuration/loading to comply with gross axle weight rating (GAWR) requirements.

WARNING!

An improperly adjusted weight-distributing hitch system may reduce handling, stability, braking performance, and could result in an accident.

Weight-distributing systems may not be compatible with surge brake couplers. Consult with your hitch and trailer manufacturer or an authorized recreational vehicle dealer for additional information.

Fifth-Wheel Hitch

The fifth-wheel hitch is a special high platform with a coupling that mounts over the rear axle of the tow vehicle in the truck bed. It connects a vehicle and fifth-wheel trailer with a coupling king pin.

Gooseneck Hitch

The gooseneck hitch employs a pivoted coupling arm which attaches to a ball mounted in the bed of a pickup truck. The coupling arm connects to the hitch mounted over the rear axle in the truck bed.

Trailer Hitch Classification

The rear bumper is intended to tow trailers up to 2,000 lbs (907 kg) without added equipment or alterations to the standard equipment. Your vehicle may be factory equipped for safe towing of trailers weighing over 2,000 lbs (907 kg) with the optional Trailer Tow Prep Package. See your authorized dealer for package content.

The following chart provides the industry standard for the maximum trailer weight a given trailer hitch class can tow and should be used to assist you in selecting the correct trailer hitch for your intended towing condition. Refer to "Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)" for the website address that contains the necessary information for your specific drivetrain.

Trailer Hitch Classification Definitions	
Class	**Max. Trailer Hitch Industry Standards**
Class I - Light Duty	2,000 lbs (907 kg)
Class II - Medium Duty	3,500 lbs (1587 kg)
Class III - Heavy Duty	5,000 lbs (2268 kg)
Class IV - Extra Heavy Duty	10,000 lbs (4540 kg)
Fifth Wheel/Gooseneck	Greater than 10,000 lbs (4540 kg)
Refer to the "Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)" chart for the Maximum Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) towable for your given drivetrain.	

All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.

Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

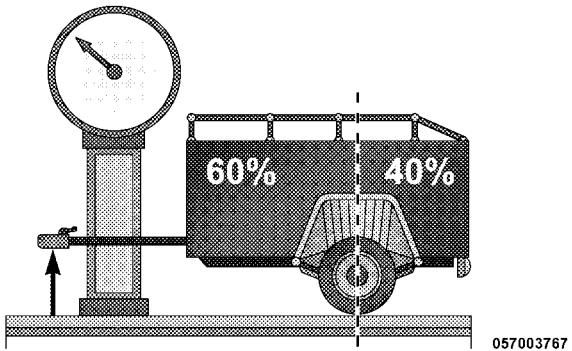
NOTE: For additional trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

- **http:// www.dodge.com/towing**.
- **http:// www.dodge.ca** (Canada).

Trailer and Tongue Weight

Always load a trailer with 60% to 65% of the weight in the front of the trailer. This places 10% to 15% of the Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) on the tow hitch of your vehicle. Loads balanced over the wheels or heavier in the rear can cause the trailer to sway **severely** side to side which will cause loss of control of vehicle and trailer. Failure to load trailers heavier in front is the cause of many trailer accidents.

Never exceed the maximum tongue weight stamped on your bumper or trailer hitch.



Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle:

- The tongue weight of the trailer.
- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle.
- The weight of the driver and all passengers.

NOTE: Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options, or authorized dealer-installed options must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to "Tire and Loading Information placard" under "Tire Safety Information" in Section 5.

Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components, the following guidelines are recommended:

CAUTION!

- **Avoid towing a trailer for the first 500 miles (805 km) of vehicle operation. Doing so may damage your vehicle.**

(Continued)

5

CAUTION! (Continued)

- **During the first 500 miles (805 km) of trailer towing, limit your speed to 50 mph (80 km/h).**

Perform the maintenance listed in Section 8 of this manual. When towing a trailer, never exceed the GAWR, or GCWR, ratings.

WARNING!

Improper towing can lead to an injury accident. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have an accident.**
- **When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.**
- **Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle automatic transmission in PARK. With four-wheel drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL. Always, block or "chock" the trailer wheels.**
- **GCWR must not be exceeded.**
- **Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:**
  1. **GVWR**
  2. **GTW**
  3. **GAWR**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized (This requirement may limit the ability to always achieve the 10% to 15% range of tongue weight as a percentage of total trailer weight.)

Towing Requirements – Tires

– Do not attempt to tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire.

– Proper tire inflation pressures are essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Refer to "Tires – General Information" in this section.

– Check the trailer tires for proper tire inflation pressures before trailer usage.

– Check for signs of tire wear or visible tire damage before towing a trailer. Refer to "Tires – General Information" in this section.

– When replacing tires, refer to "Tires – General Information" in this section. Replacing tires with a higher load carrying capacity will not increase the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limits.

Towing Requirements – Trailer Brakes

– Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.

– An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.

– Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (454 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs (907 kg).

CAUTION!

If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.

WARNING!

- **Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have an accident.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**

Towing Requirements – Trailer Lights & Wiring

Whenever you pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stop lights and turn signals on the trailer are required for motoring safety.

Twelve trailer tow circuits are provided at the rear of the chassis. These circuits are unterminated and sealed. Seven of the 12 circuits are the standard 7-pin trailer wiring circuits. Three of the 12 circuits are upfitter circuits used for aftermarket applications. Two of the 12 circuits are additional trailer circuits. For additional information about trailer tow circuits or other exterior lighting capabilities of your vehicle, refer to the Body Builder's Guide by accessing "www.dodge.com/bodybuilder" and choosing the appropriate links.

NOTE: Do not cut or splice wiring into the vehicles wiring harness.

WARNING!

Any work done to the vehicle's electrical system or wiring should be performed by a qualified automotive technician. If done improperly it may cause damage to the electrical system wiring and could result in serious or fatal injury.

The following chart identifies the maximum electrical loads that the trailer tow output circuits are capable of supporting.

Trailer Tow Additional Lamp Loads		
Output Functions	Maximum Current	Additional Bulbs Allowed. Example Only. Other bulb combinations can be used as long as maximum current is not exceeded.
Stop/Turn Left	16A	2 #3157 bulbs for stop/turn
Stop/Turn Right	16A	2 #3157 bulbs for stop/turn
Trailer Park Lamps	14A	2 #1157 bulbs (two filament park/stop/turn) plus up to 24 #168 or #194 peanut bulbs.

Towing Tips

Before setting out on a trip, practice turning, stopping and backing the trailer in an area away from heavy traffic.

Automatic Transmission

The "DRIVE" range can be selected when towing. However, if frequent shifting occurs while in this range, the "TOW HAUL" or "OD/OFF" range should be selected.

NOTE: Using the "TOW HAUL" or "OD/OFF" range while operating the vehicle under heavy operating conditions will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat build up. This action will also provide better engine braking.

The automatic transmission fluid and filter should be changed if you REGULARLY tow a trailer for more than 45 minutes of continuous operation. Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" in Section 8 of this manual for proper maintenance intervals.

NOTE: Check the automatic transmission fluid level before towing.

Tow/Haul – If Equipped
To reduce potential for automatic transmission overheating, turn the "TOW HAUL OD/OFF" feature ON when driving in hilly areas or shift the transmission to Drive position 2 on more severe grades.

Electronic Speed Control – If Equipped

– Do not use in hilly terrain or with heavy loads.

– When using the speed control, if you experience speed drops greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), disengage until you can get back to cruising speed.

– Use speed control in flat terrain and with light loads to maximize fuel efficiency.

Cooling System
To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

– *City Driving*
When stopped for short periods of time, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and increase engine idle speed.

– *Highway Driving*
Reduce speed.

– *Air Conditioning*
Turn off temporarily.

SNOWPLOW

Snowplow Prep Packages are available as a factory installed option. These packages include components necessary to equip your vehicle with a snowplow.

NOTE: Before installation of a snowplow it is highly recommended that the owner/installer obtain and follow the recommendations contained within the current

Dodge Body Builders Guide. See your authorized dealer, installer or snowplow manufacturer for this information. There are unique electrical systems that must be connected to properly assure operator safety and prevent overloading vehicle systems.

WARNING!

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airbag system in an accident. Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual

CAUTION!

The "Lamp Out" indicator could illuminate if exterior lamps are not properly installed.

Before Plowing

- Check the hydraulic system for leaks and proper fluid level.
- Check the mounting bolts and nuts for proper tightness.
- Check the runners and cutting edge for excessive wear. The cutting edge should be 1/4 to 1/2 in (6 cm to 1.2 cm) above ground in snow plowing position.
- Check that snowplow lighting is connected and functioning properly.

Snowplow Prep Package Model Availability

For Information about snowplow applications visit www.dodge.com or refer to the current Dodge Body Builders Guide.

1. The maximum number of occupants in the truck should not exceed two.

2. The total GVWR or the Front GAWR or the Rear GAWR should never be exceeded.

3. The snowplow prep packages are not available with the Sport Package.

4. Cargo capacity will be reduced by the addition of options or passengers, etc.

The loaded vehicle weight, including the snowplow system, all aftermarket accessories, driver, passengers, options, and cargo, must not exceed either the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVWR) or Gross Axle Weight (GAWR) ratings. These weights are specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver's side door opening.

NOTE: Detach the snowplow when transporting passengers.

Vehicle front end wheel alignment was set to specifications at the factory without consideration for the weight of the plow. Front end toe-in should be checked and reset if necessary at the beginning and end of the snowplow season. This will help prevent uneven tire wear.

The blade should be lowered whenever the vehicle is parked.

Maintain and operate your vehicle and snowplow equipment following the recommendations provided by the specific snowplow manufacturer.

Over the Road Operation With Snowplow Attached

The blade restricts air flow to the radiator and causes the engine to operate at higher than normal temperatures. Therefore, when transporting the plow, angle the blade completely and position it as low as road or surface conditions permit. Do not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h). The operator should always maintain a safe stopping distance and allow adequate passing clearance.

Operating Tips

Under ideal snow plowing conditions, 20 mph (32 km/h) should be maximum operating speed. The operator should be familiar with the area and surface to be cleaned. Reduce speed and use extreme caution when plowing unfamiliar areas or under poor visibility.

NOTE: During snowplow usage on vehicles equipped with an overhead console module, the outside temperature display will show higher temperatures than the outside ambient temperature. The higher displayed temperature is due to blocked or reduced airflow to the underhood ambient temperature sensor by the snowplow. This is common and outside temperature display operation will return to normal when the snowplow is removed.

General Maintenance

Snowplows should be maintained in accordance with the plow manufacturer's instructions.

Keep all snowplow electrical connections and battery terminals clean and free of corrosion.

When plowing snow, to avoid transmission and drivetrain damage, the following precautions should be observed.

- Operate with transfer case in 4L when plowing small or congested areas where speeds are not likely to exceed 15 mph (24 km/h). At higher speeds operate in 4H.
- Vehicles with automatic transmissions should use 4L range when plowing deep or heavy snow for extended periods of time to avoid transmission overheating.
- Do not shift the transmission unless the engine has returned to idle and wheels have stopped. Make a practice of stepping on the brake pedal before shifting the transmission.

RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

CAUTION!

Front or rear wheel lifts should not be used. Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when recreational towing.

Recreational Towing – Two-Wheel Drive Models

Recreational towing of two-wheel drive models is not allowed. Towing with the rear wheels on the ground can result in severe transmission damage.

Recreational Towing – Four-Wheel Drive Models

CAUTION!

Failure to follow these requirements can cause severe damage to the transmission and/or transfer case.

NOTE: The manual shift transfer case must be shifted into NEUTRAL for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be shifted into the PARK position for recreational towing.

Recreational Towing Procedure — Manual Shift Transfer Case — If Equipped

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing:

CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut OFF the engine.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
5. Shift the transfer case lever into NEUTRAL.
6. Start the engine.
7. Shift the transmission into REVERSE.
8. Release the brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 with the transmission in DRIVE.
10. Shut OFF the engine and place the ignition key in the unlocked OFF position.
11. Shift the transmission into PARK.
12. Apply the parking brake.
13. Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle with the tow bar.
14. Release the parking brake.

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the transmission is shifted into PARK with the transfer case in NEUTRAL and the engine running. With the transfer case in NEUTRAL ensure that the engine is OFF prior to shifting the transmission into PARK.

Returning to Normal Operation — Manual Shift Transfer Case

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shut OFF the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
6. Shift the transfer case lever into desired position.
7. Shift the transmission into PARK.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move, regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

CAUTION!

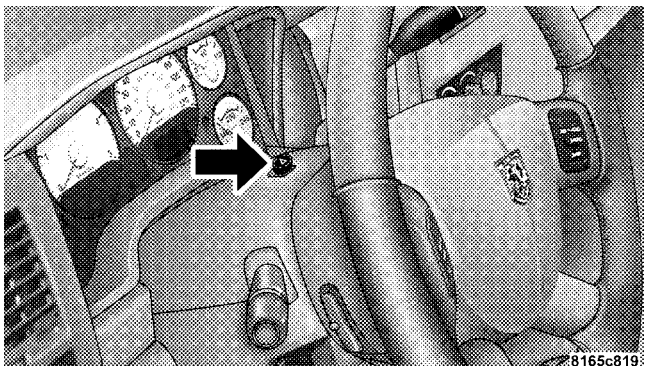
- **Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**
- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case and damage the internal parts.**

WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES

CONTENTS

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is mounted on the top of the steering column.



Hazard Warning Flasher Switch

Press the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Press the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flasher.

This is an emergency warning system and should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning flasher will continue to operate even though the ignition switch is OFF.

NOTE: With extended use, the Hazard Warning flasher may discharge your battery.

JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING

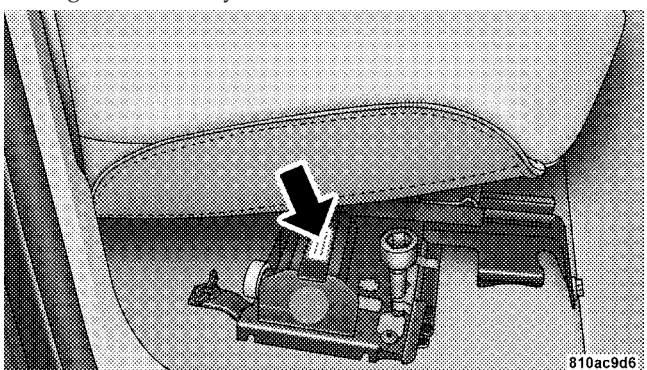
WARNING!

- **Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.**
- **The jack is designed to use as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.**

3500 Models — If Equipped

The jack and jack tools are stored under the front passenger seat. Lift the flap on the side of the seat for access.

Remove the jack and tools by removing the wing bolt and sliding the assembly from under the seat.



Jack Location

WARNING!

After using the jack and tools, always reinstall them in the original carrier and location. While driving you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. A loose jack, tools, bracket or other objects in the vehicle may move around with force, resulting in serious injury.

4500/5500 Models
These vehicles do not come equipped with a jack.

NOTE: Jacking and tire changing on 4500/5500 models should be performed by an authorized dealer, or knowledgeable service personnel with the appropriate heavy duty equipment, like a tire service company.

Preparations For Jacking

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Set the parking brake.

3. Place the shift lever into PARK (automatic transmission) or REVERSE (manual transmission). On 4-Wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the "4L" position.

4. Turn OFF the ignition.

5. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.

6. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.

NOTE: Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

Jacking Instructions

Instructions

WARNING!

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.**
- **Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.**
- **Set the parking brake firmly and set an automatic transmission in PARK; a manual transmission in REVERSE.**
- **Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.**
- **Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

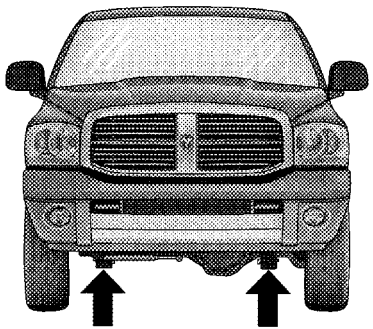
- **If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.**
- **To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.**
- **Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.**

Jack Warning Label

1. If equipped, remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.

2. Using the wheel wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the wheel nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.

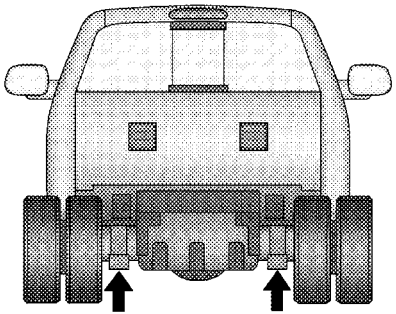
3. When changing the front wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the drive tubes extending to the front. Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.



060505397

Front Jacking Locations

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Securely place the jack under the sway bar bracket (unless both tires are flat on one side, then place jack under shock bracket) facing forward in vehicle. Connect the jack tube extension and lug wrench.



060505668

Rear Jacking Location

Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.

NOTE: If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack.

4. By rotating the wheel wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle unstable and cause an accident. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the wheel nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and wheel nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel on single rear wheel (SRW) models. On dual rear wheel models (DRW) the lug nuts are a two-piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.

6. Using the wheel wrench, finish tightening the nuts using a crisscross pattern. The correct nut tightness is 135 ft lbs (183 N·m) torque for single rear wheel (SRW) models and 145 ft lbs (197 N·m) for dual rear wheel models. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your authorized dealer or at a service station.

WARNING!

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure someone in the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the extra tire and wheel in the places provided.

7. Install wheel center cap (if equipped) and remove wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.

8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.

9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

NOTE: Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.

For single rear wheel (SRW) models, use the blade on the end of the lug wrench to pry the hub cap off. Insert the blade end into the pry off notch and carefully pop off the hub cap with a back and forth motion.

On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps. The jack handle driver has a hook at one end that will fit in the pry off notch of the rear hub caps. Position the hook and pull out on the ratchet firmly. The hub cap should pop off. The wheel skins can now be removed. For the front hub cap on models use the blade on the end of the lug wrench to pry the caps off. The wheel skin can now be removed.

CAUTION!

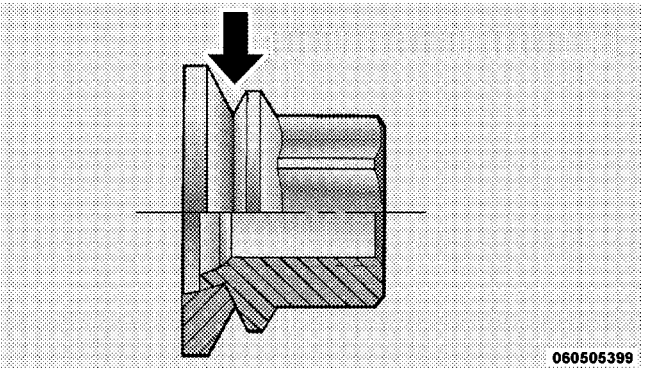
- **Use a back and forth motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap; finish may occur.**
- **The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pry off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.**

You must use the flat end of the lug wrench to pry off the wheel skins. Insert the flat tip completely and using a back and forth motion, loosen the wheel skin. Repeat this procedure around the tire until the skin pops off.

Replace the wheel skins first using a rubber mallet. When replacing the hub caps, tilt the cap retainer over the lug nut bolt circle and strike the high side down with a rubber mallet. Be sure that the hub caps and wheel skins are firmly seated around the wheel.

Dual Rear Wheels

Dual wheels are flat mounted, center piloted. The lug nuts are a two-piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts and add two drops of oil at the interface between the hex and the washer.



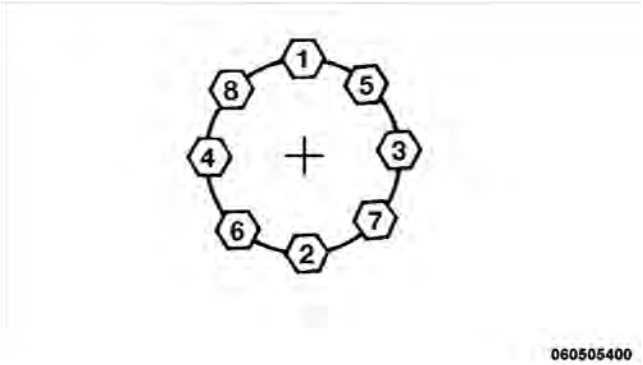
Oiling Location

Slots in the wheels will assist in properly orienting the inner and outer wheels. Align these slots when assembling the wheels for best access to the tire valve on the inner wheel. The tires of both dual wheels must be completely off the ground when tightening to insure wheel centering and maximum wheel clamping.

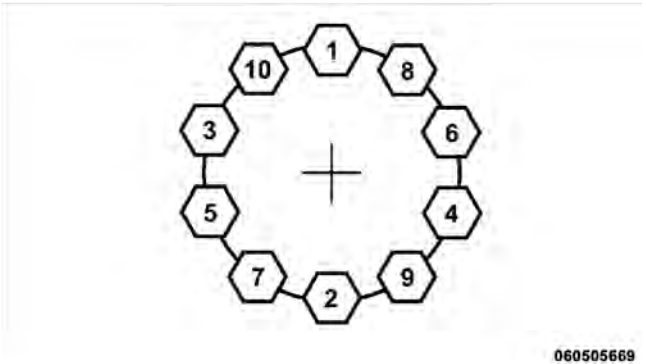
Dual wheel models require a special heavy-duty lug nut tightening adapter (included with the vehicle) to correctly tighten the lug nuts. Also, when it is necessary to remove and install dual rear wheels, use a proper vehicle lifting device.

NOTE: When installing a spare tire (if equipped) as part of a dual rear wheel end combination, the tire diameter of the two individual tires must be compared. If there is a significant difference, the larger tire should be installed in a front location. The correct direction of rotation for dual tire installations must also be observed.

These dual rear wheels should be tightened as follows:



Tightening Pattern (8 Studs)



Tightening Pattern (10 Studs)

1. Tighten the wheel nuts in the numbered sequence to a snug fit.

2. Retighten the wheel nuts in the same sequence to the torques listed in the table. Go through the sequence a second time to verify that specific torque has been achieved. Retighten to specifications at 100 miles (160 km) and after 500 miles (800 km).

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

Wheel Nut Torque

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles/kilometers of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The nuts should then be tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the nuts to final torque in increments. Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the nut opposite to the nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved. Recommended torques are shown in the following chart.

Disc Wheels	Type Nut	Stud Size	Torque Ft Lbs	Torque Newton Meters
	Cone	9/16-18	120-150	160-200
	Flanged	9/16-18	130-160	190-220

To Stow The Flat Or Spare — If Equipped
Refer to Upfitters Body Builders Guide for information on stowing your spare tire (if equipped).

HOISTING

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations. Refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts or the underbody.

CAUTION!

Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.

JUMP-STARTING

WARNING!

- **To prevent personal injury or damage to clothing, do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin or fabrics. Do not lean over a battery when connecting jumper cables or allow cable clamps to touch each other. Keep open flames or sparks away from battery vent holes. Always wear eye protection when working with batteries.**
- **Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source that has a greater than 12-Volt system, i.e., do not use a 24-Volt power source.**

NOTE: Replacement batteries should both be of equal size to prevent damage to the vehicle's charging system.

Your vehicle is equipped with two 12-Volt batteries. If it becomes necessary to use a booster battery with jumper cables to start a vehicle's engine because its batteries are discharged, the following procedure should be used:

Set the parking brake and place an automatic transmission in PARK (or NEUTRAL for a manual transmission). Turn off lights, heater and other electrical loads. Observe charge indicator (if equipped) in both batteries. If the indicator (if equipped) is light or yellow on either battery, replace that battery.

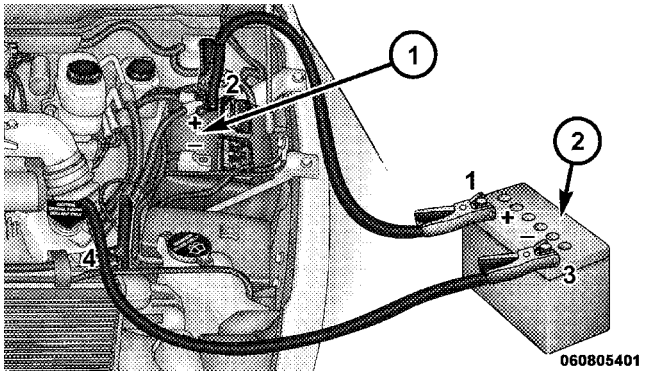
CAUTION!

Use the jump-start procedure only when the charge indicator (if equipped) in both batteries is dark in the center. Do not attempt jump-starting when either battery charge indicator (if equipped) is bright or yellow. If the charge indicator (if equipped) has a green dot in the center, failure to start is not due to a discharged battery and cranking system should be checked.

1. Attach one jumper cable to the positive terminal of booster battery and the other end of the same cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.

WARNING!

Do not permit vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.



Attaching Booster Cables

1 — Discharged Battery
2 — Booster Battery

2. Connect one end of the other jumper cable to negative (-) post of booster battery. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to a good ground on the engine block of the vehicle with the discharged battery. Make sure a good connection is made, free of dirt and grease.

WARNING!

- **Do not connect the cable to the negative post of the discharge battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode.**
- **During cold weather when temperatures are below freezing point, electrolyte in a discharged battery may freeze. Do not attempt jump-starting because the battery could rupture or explode. The battery temperature must be brought up above freezing point before attempting to jump-start.**

3. Take care that the clamps from one cable do not inadvertently touch clamps from the other cable. Do not lean over the battery when making connection. The negative connection must provide good electrical conductivity and current carrying capacity.

4. After the engine is started or if the engine fails to start, cables must be disconnected in the following order:

a. Disconnect the negative cable at the engine ground.

b. Disconnect the negative cable at the negative post on booster battery.

c. Disconnect the cable from the positive post of both batteries.

WARNING!

Any procedure other than above could result in:

- **Personal injury caused by electrolyte squirting out the battery vent;**
- **Personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion;**
- **Damage to charging system of booster vehicle or of immobilized vehicle.**

With Portable Starting Unit

There are many types of these units available. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for necessary precautions and operation.

CAUTION!

It is very important that the starting unit operating voltage does not exceed 12-Volts DC or damage to battery, starter motor, alternator, or electrical system may occur.

FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE

If the vehicle becomes stuck in snow, sand, or mud, it can often be moved by a rocking motion. Move the shift lever rhythmically between DRIVE and REVERSE while applying slight pressure to the accelerator.

In general, the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure to maintain the rocking motion without spinning the wheels or racing the engine, is most effective. Racing the engine or spinning the wheels, due to the frustration of not freeing the vehicle, may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the shift lever in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

CAUTION!

- **When "rocking" a stuck vehicle by moving between 1st and REVERSE, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.**
- **Revving the engine or spinning the wheels too fast may lead to transmission overheating and failure. It can also damage the tires. Do not spin the wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) while in gear (no transmission shifting occurring).**

EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

NOTE: For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Chains are not recommended for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps and chains may break, causing serious injury.**

CAUTION!

Tow hooks are for emergency use only to rescue a vehicle stranded off-road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for the purpose, following equipment manufacturer's instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to the main structural members of the vehicle—not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws applying to vehicles under tow must be observed.

Four-Wheel Drive Vehicles

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the transfer case while towing, always use one of the following methods.

NOTE: The transfer case must be in the NEUTRAL position, and the transmission must be in PARK (automatic transmission), or in gear (manual transmission) to tow a four-wheel drive vehicle, unless all its wheels are **OFF** the ground.

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

Two-Wheel Drive Vehicles

Provided that the transmission is operable, tow with the transmission in NEUTRAL and the ignition key in the OFF position along with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on the ground. Speed must not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) and the distance must not exceed 15 miles (25 km).

CAUTION!

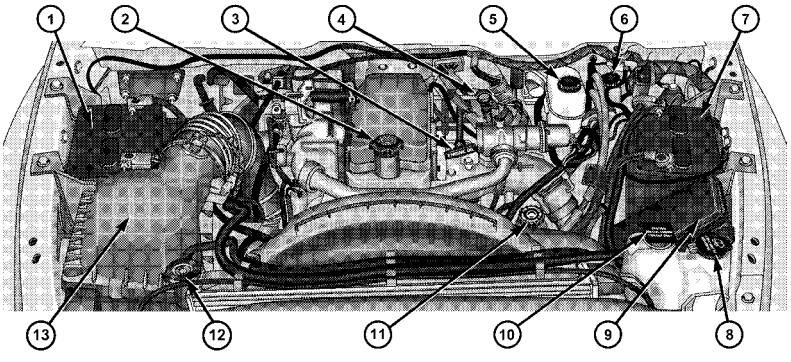
Towing faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) or for more than 15 miles (25 km) can cause severe damage to the transmission. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

If the vehicle is to be towed faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) or more than 15 miles (25 km) the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground. It may also be towed on a flatbed or with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on a dolly.

MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 6.7L DIESEL



1 — Battery
2 — Engine Oil Fill
3 — Engine Oil Dipstick
4 — Automatic Transmission Dipstick
5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir
6 — Clutch Master Cylinder (Manual Transmission Only)
7 — Battery
8 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
9 — Integrated Power Module
10 — Engine Coolant Reservoir
11 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
12 — Coolant Pressure Cap
13 — Air Cleaner Filter

REPLACEMENT PARTS

Use of genuine MOPAR® parts for normal/scheduled maintenance and repairs is highly recommended to ensure the designed performance. Damage or failures caused by the use of non-MOPAR® parts for maintenance and repairs will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

DEALER SERVICE

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

The pages that follow contain the **required** maintenance services determined by the engineers who designed your vehicle.

Besides those maintenance items specified in the fixed maintenance schedule, there are other components which may require servicing or replacement in the future.

CAUTION!

- **Failure to properly maintain your vehicle or perform repairs and service when necessary could result in more costly repairs, damage to other components or negatively impact vehicle performance. Immediately have potential malfunctions examined by an authorized Chrysler Group LLC dealership or qualified repair center.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! (Continued)

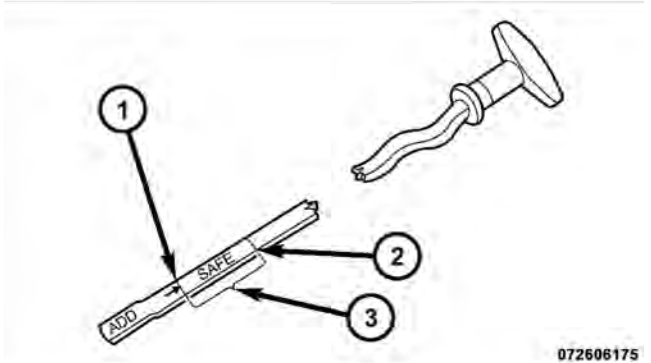
- **Your vehicle has been built with improved fluids that protect the performance and durability of your vehicle and also allow extended maintenance intervals. Do not use chemical flushes in these components as the chemicals can damage your engine, transmission, power steering or air conditioning. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. If a flush is needed because of component malfunction, use only the specified fluid for the flushing procedure.**

Engine Oil

Checking Oil Level

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. Check the oil level at regular intervals. The best time to check the oil level is before starting the engine after it has been

parked overnight. When checking oil after operating the engine, first ensure the engine is at full operating temperature, then wait for 30 minutes after engine shutdown to check the oil.



1 — ADD Range
2 — Full Mark
3 — SAFE Range

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings. Add oil only when the level on the dipstick is below the "ADD" mark. The total capacity from the low mark to the high mark is 2 qts (1.9L).

CAUTION!

Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause oil aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.

Never operate the engine with oil level below the "ADD" mark or above the upper "SAFE" mark.

Change Engine Oil

Refer to "Maintenance Schedule/Oil Change Indicator System" for the recommended engine oil change intervals.

Engine Oil Selection

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends engine oils that are API CJ-4 certified and meet the requirements of Chrysler Group LLC. Use MOPAR® or an equivalent oil meeting Chrysler Material Standard MS-10902. Products meeting Cummins® CES 20081 may also be used. The identification of these engine oils are typically located on the back of the oil container.

American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol

818dc76e

This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacturer only recommends API Certified engine oils.

Oils with a high ash content may produce deposits on valves that can progress to guttering and valve burning. A maximum sulfated ash content of 1.00 mass % is recommended for all oil used in the engine.

The same oil change interval is to be followed for synthetic oil as for petroleum based oil. Also, synthetic oil must meet the same performance specifications as petroleum oil.

CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your engine oil as the chemicals can damage your engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

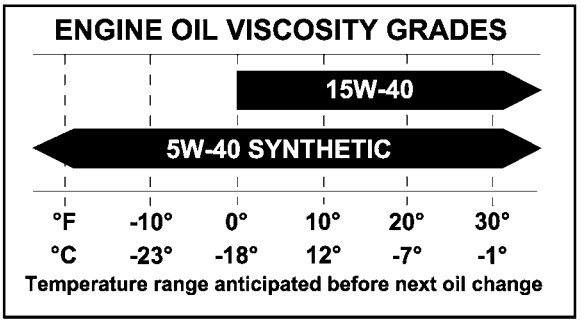
Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade)

Use SAE 15W-40 engine oil that meets Chrysler Materials Standard MS-10902 and the API CJ-4 engine oil category.

In ambient temperatures below 0°F (-18°C), SAE 5W-40 **synthetic** engine oil that meets Chrysler Materials Standard MS-10902 and the API CJ-4 engine oil category is required.

CAUTION!

Failure to use SAE 5W-40 synthetic engine oil in ambient temperatures below 0°F (-18°C) could result in severe engine damage.



80f2247d

Engine oil not designated by the Chrysler or Cummins® Material Standards and API CJ-4 should not be used, as engine and exhaust system durability may be compromised. The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your engine. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to “Engine Compartment” in this section.

Synthetic Engine Oils
You may use synthetic engine oils provided the recommended oil quality requirements are met, and the recommended maintenance intervals for oil and filter changes are followed.

Materials Added to Engine Oil
The manufacturer strongly recommends against the addition of any additives (other than leak detection dyes or lube odorants) to the engine oil. Engine oil is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives.

Engine Oil Filter
Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in this section. The engine oil filter should be changed at every engine oil change.

Disposing Of Used Engine Oil And Filter
Care should be taken in disposing of the used engine fluids from your vehicle. Used fluids, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact an authorized dealer, service station, or governmental agency for advice on recycling programs and where used fluids and filters can be safely discarded in your area.

Engine Air Cleaner Filter

CAUTION!

All air entering the engine intake must be filtered. The abrasive particles in unfiltered air will cause rapid wear to engine components.

The condition of the air cleaner filter is monitored by the Engine Control Module. The "SERVICE AIR FILTER" message will display in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) when service is required. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center" in this manual.

Do not remove the top of the air filter housing to inspect the filter element on your diesel engine under normal operating conditions.

The "SERVICE AIR FILTER" message could be displayed periodically. This is because engine air flow requirements change based on driving conditions. As the filter becomes more restrictive and air flow requirements increase the "SERVICE AIR FILTER" message will be displayed. The message may not be displayed in subsequent drive cycles if the same conditions are not met. The air filter element should be replaced within 250 miles (402 km) from the first time this message is displayed to ensure proper engine operation during all driving conditions.

CAUTION!

Driving with a restricted air filter can cause engine damage. Driving in dusty environments for extended periods will lead to rapid air filter plugging. Action should be taken as soon as the "SERVICE AIR FILTER" message is displayed.

If the vehicle experiences a sudden loss of engine power when being driven in heavy snow, rain or when plowing snow, and the "SERVICE AIR FILTER" message is showing a plugged filter, then visually inspect the air filter for snow/ice build up or extreme water saturation. If the air filter is not damaged, remove all snow/ice and reinstall air filter. If the air filter is damaged, replace filter element.

NOTE: The air filter housing contains a Mass Air Flow sensor. This sensor is critical to proper engine operation and component longevity. Any damage or modification to this sensor could result in major engine and/or

exhaust aftertreatment damage. This includes the use of non-approved air filters. Use only MOPAR® approved air filters or equivalent.

A visual inspection of the air cleaner filter element is never recommended under normal circumstances. A badly restricted element may appear clean while a soiled element may be quite effective in filtering particles without restricting air flow. Rely on the Engine Control Module to determine when a filter change is necessary.

CAUTION!

Many aftermarket performance air filter elements do not adequately filter the air entering the engine. Use of such filters can severely damage your engine.

Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter

The fuel filter and water separator assembly is located on the driver's side of the engine. The best access to the water drain valve is from under the hood.

CAUTION!

- **Do not drain the fuel/water separator filter when the engine is running.**
- **Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.**

If water is detected in the water separator while the engine is running, or while the ignition switch is in the ON position, the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" will illuminate and an audible chime will be heard five times. At this point you should stop the engine and drain the water from the separator.

CAUTION!

If the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" remains on, DO NOT START the engine before you drain water from the fuel filter to avoid engine damage.

If the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" comes on and a single chime is heard while you are driving, or with the ignition switch in the ON position, there may be a problem with your water separator wiring or sensor. See your authorized dealer for service.

Upon proper draining of the water from the fuel filter, the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" will remain illuminated for approximately 10 seconds. If the water was drained while the engine was running, the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" may remain on for approximately three minutes.

NOTE: Care should be taken in disposing of used fluids from your vehicle. Used fluids, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact an authorized dealer, service station, or government agency for advice on recycling programs and for where used fluids and filters can be properly disposed of in your area.

Drain the fuel/water separator filter when the "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" is ON. Within 10 minutes of vehicle shutdown, turn the drain valve (located on the side of the filter) counterclockwise 1/4 turn, turn the ignition switch to the ON position, and allow any accumulated water to drain. Leave the drain valve open until all water and contaminants have been removed. When clean fuel is visible, close the drain valve by turning it clockwise, and turn the ignition switch to OFF.

NOTE: The fuel/water separator drain valve is located on the bottom of the fuel filter housing.

If more than a couple ounces/milliliters of fuel have been drained, follow the directions for "Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel."

Fuel Filter Replacement

NOTE: Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturer's filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.

1 — Drain Valve

CAUTION!

- **Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! (Continued)

- **Do not prefill the fuel filter when installing a new fuel filter. There is a possibility debris could be introduced into the fuel filter during this action. It is best to install the filter dry and allow the in-tank lift pump to prime the fuel system.**

1. Ensure engine is turned off.

2. Place drain pan under the fuel filter drain hose.

3. Open the water drain valve 1/4 turn counterclockwise and completely drain fuel and water into the approved container.

4. Close the water drain valve.

5. Remove lid using a socket or strap wrench. Rotate counterclockwise for removal. Remove used o-ring and discard it.

6. Remove the used filter cartridge from the housing and dispose of according to your local regulations.

7. Wipe clean the sealing surfaces of the lid and housing.

8. Install new o-ring back into ring groove on the filter housing and lubricate with clean engine oil.

9. Remove new filter cartridge from plastic bag and install into housing.

NOTE: Do not remove cartridge from bag until you reach this step in order to keep cartridge clean.

10. Push down on the cartridge to ensure it is properly seated. **Do not pre-fill the filter housing with fuel.**

11. Install lid onto housing and tighten to 22.5 ft lbs (30.5 N.m). Do not overtighten the lid.

12. Start the engine and confirm no leaks are present.

Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel

WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

1. Add a substantial amount of fuel to the tank, approximately 5 to 10 gal (19L to 38L).

2. Turn the ignition switch to the RUN position, wait for four seconds, then turn the ignition switch back to the OFF position. Repeat this step four times.

3. Start the engine using the "Normal Starting" procedure.

4. Repeat the procedure if the engine does not start.

CAUTION!

Do not engage the starter motor for more than 15 seconds at a time. Allow two minutes between the cranking intervals.

NOTE: The engine may run rough until the air is forced from all the fuel lines.

WARNING!

Do not use alcohol or gasoline as a fuel blending agent. They can be unstable under certain conditions and be hazardous or explosive when mixed with diesel fuel.

CAUTION!

Due to lack of lubricants in alcohol or gasoline, the use of these fuels can cause damage to the fuel system.

NOTE:

- A maximum blend of 5% biodiesel, meeting ASTM specification D-6751 may be used with your Cummins® diesel engine. Use of biodiesel mixture in excess of 5% can negatively impact the on-engine fuel filter's ability to separate water from the fuel, resulting in high pressure fuel system corrosion or damage.
- Ethanol blends are not recommended or approved for use with your Cummins® diesel engine.
- In addition, commercially available fuel additives are not necessary for the proper operation of your Cummins® diesel engine.

Intervention Regeneration Strategy – EVIC Message Process Flow

The Cummins® diesel engine meets all EPA Heavy Duty Diesel Engine Emissions Standards, resulting in the lowest emitting diesel engine ever produced.

To achieve these emissions standards, your vehicle is equipped with a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust system. The engine and exhaust after-treatment system work together to achieve the EPA Heavy Duty Diesel Engine Emissions Standards. These systems are seamlessly integrated into your vehicle and managed by the Cummins® Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM manages engine combustion to allow the exhaust system's catalyst to trap and burn Particulate Matter (PM) pollutants, with no input or interaction on your part.

Additionally, your vehicle has the ability to alert you to additional maintenance required on your truck or engine.

Refer to the following messages that may be displayed on your Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC):

WARNING!

A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

Perform Service

Your vehicle will require emissions maintenance at a set interval. To help remind you when this maintenance is due, the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) will display "Perform Service". When the "Perform Service" message is displayed on the EVIC it is necessary to have the emissions maintenance performed. Emissions maintenance may include replacing the Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) filter element, cleaning of the EGR Cooler, cleaning of the EGR Valve, and/or cleaning of the turbocharger. The procedure for clearing and resetting the "Perform Service" indicator message is located in the appropriate Service Information.

Exhaust System – Regeneration Required Now

"Exhaust System — Regeneration Required Now" will be displayed on the overhead console of your vehicle if the exhaust particulate filter reaches 80% of its maximum storage capacity. Under conditions of exclusive short duration and low speed driving cycles, your Cummins® diesel engine and exhaust after-treatment system may never reach the conditions required to remove the trapped PM. If this occurs, the "Exhaust System — Regeneration Required Now" message will be displayed in the EVIC. If this message is displayed, you will hear one chime to assist in alerting you of this condition.

By simply driving your vehicle at highway speeds for as little as 45 minutes, you can remedy the condition in the particulate filter system and allow your Cummins® diesel engine and exhaust after-treatment system to remove the trapped PM and restore the system to normal operating condition.

Exhaust Filter XX% Full
Indicates that the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is approaching full.

Exhaust System – Regeneration in Process
Indicates that the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is self-cleaning. Maintain your current driving condition until regeneration is completed.

Exhaust System – Regeneration Completed
Indicates that the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) self-cleaning is completed. If this message is displayed, you will hear one chime to assist in alerting you of this condition.

Service Required – See Dealer Now
Regeneration has been disabled due to a system malfunction. At this point the engine PCM will register a fault code, the instrument panel will display a MIL light.

CAUTION!

See your authorized dealer, as damage to the exhaust system could occur soon with continued operation.

Exhaust Filter Full – Power Reduced See Dealer
The PCM derates the engine in order to limit the likelihood of permanent damage to the after-treatment system. If this condition is not corrected and a dealer service is not performed, extensive exhaust after-treatment damage can occur. In order to correct this condition it will be necessary to have your vehicle serviced by your local authorized dealer.

CAUTION!

See your authorized dealer, as damage to the exhaust system could occur soon with continued operation.

Maintenance-Free Batteries

The top of the maintenance-free batteries are permanently sealed. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

NOTE: Replacement batteries should both be of equal capacity to prevent damage to the vehicle's charging system.

CAUTION!

It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked (+) positive and negative (-) and are identified on the battery case. Also, if a "fast charger" is used while the battery is in vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to the battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.

WARNING!

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Always wash hands after handling the battery.

Battery Blanket Usage

A battery loses 60% of its cranking power as the battery temperature decreases to 0°F (-18°). For the same decrease in temperature, the engine requires twice as much power to crank at the same RPM. The use of 120 Volt AC powered battery blankets will greatly increase starting capability at low temperatures. Suitable battery blankets are available from your authorized MOPAR® dealer.

Cooling System

WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator is hot.

Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh engine coolant (antifreeze). Check the front of the A/C condenser for any accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently spraying water from a garden hose vertically down the face of the condenser.

Check the coolant recovery bottle tubing for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts and tightness of the connection at the bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

With the engine at normal operating temperature (but not running), check the cooling system pressure cap for proper vacuum sealing by draining a small amount of engine coolant (antifreeze) from the radiator drain cock.

If the cap is sealing properly, the engine coolant (antifreeze) will begin to drain from the coolant recovery bottle. DO NOT REMOVE THE COOLANT PRESSURE CAP WHEN THE COOLING SYSTEM IS HOT.

Cooling System – Drain, Flush and Refill
Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" in this manual for the proper maintenance intervals.

If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or contains a considerable amount of sediment, clean and flush with a reliable cooling system cleaner. Follow with a thorough rinsing to remove all deposits and chemicals. Properly dispose of the old engine coolant (antifreeze) solution.

Selection Of Coolant
Use only the manufacturers recommended engine coolant (antifreeze). Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in this section for the correct fluid type.

CAUTION!

- **Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified HOAT engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. If a non-HOAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, it should be replaced with the specified engine coolant (antifreeze) as soon as possible.**
- **Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant (antifreeze) and may plug the radiator.**
- **This vehicle has not been designed for use with Propylene Glycol based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of Propylene Glycol based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.**

Adding Coolant

Your vehicle has been built with an improved engine coolant (antifreeze) that allows extended maintenance intervals. This engine coolant (antifreeze) can be used up to 5 Years or 105,000 miles (168 000 km) before replacement. To prevent reducing this extended maintenance period, it is important that you use the same engine coolant (antifreeze) throughout the life of your vehicle. Please review these recommendations for using Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze).

When adding engine coolant (antifreeze):

- The manufacturer recommends using MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) or equivalent.
- Mix a minimum solution of 50% HOAT engine coolant (antifreeze) and distilled water. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below -34°F (-37°C) are anticipated.
- Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant (antifreeze) solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.

Please note that it is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.

NOTE: Mixing engine coolant (antifreeze) types will decrease the life of the engine coolant (antifreeze) and will require more frequent engine coolant (antifreeze) changes.

Cooling System Pressure Cap
The cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of engine coolant (antifreeze), and to ensure that engine coolant (antifreeze) will return to the radiator from the coolant recovery bottle.

The cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

WARNING!

- **The warning words "DO NOT OPEN HOT" on the cooling system pressure cap are a safety precaution. Never add engine coolant (antifreeze) when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove the cap to cool an overheated engine. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap while the system is hot or under pressure.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Do not use a pressure cap other than the one specified for your vehicle. Personal injury or engine damage may result.**

Disposal of Used Engine Coolant
Used ethylene glycol based engine coolant (antifreeze) is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. To prevent ingestion by animals or children, do not store ethylene glycol based engine coolant (antifreeze) in open containers or allow it to remain in puddles on the ground. If ingested by a child or pet, seek emergency assistance immediately. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

Coolant Level
The coolant bottle provides a quick visual method for determining that the coolant level is adequate. With the

engine cold, the level of the engine coolant (antifreeze) in the coolant recovery bottle should be between the ranges indicated on the bottle.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the radiator cap unless checking for engine coolant (antifreeze) freeze point or replacing engine coolant (antifreeze). Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month.

When additional engine coolant (antifreeze) is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

Points To Remember

NOTE: When the vehicle is stopped after a few miles (a few kilometers) of operation, you may observe vapor coming from the front of the engine compartment. This is normally a result of moisture from rain, snow, or high humidity accumulating on the radiator and being vaporized when the thermostat opens, allowing hot engine coolant (antifreeze) to enter the radiator.

If an examination of your engine compartment shows no evidence of radiator or hose leaks, the vehicle may be safely driven. The vapor will soon dissipate.

- Do not overfill the coolant recovery bottle.
- Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant recovery bottle. If engine coolant (antifreeze) needs to be added, the contents of the coolant recovery bottle must also be protected against freezing.
- If frequent engine coolant (antifreeze) additions are required, or if the level in the coolant recovery bottle does not drop when the engine cools, the cooling system should be pressure tested for leaks.

- Maintain engine coolant (antifreeze) concentration at 50% HOAT engine coolant (antifreeze) (minimum) and distilled water for proper corrosion protection of your engine, which contains aluminum components.
- Make sure that the radiator and coolant recovery bottle overflow hoses are not kinked or obstructed.
- Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean.
- Do not change the thermostat for Summer or Winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install ONLY the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory cooling performance, poor gas mileage, and increased emissions.

Charge Air Cooler – Inter-Cooler

The charge air cooler is positioned between the radiator and the air conditioner condenser. Air enters the engine through the air cleaner and passes through the turbocharger, where it is pressurized. This pressurized air rapidly reaches high temperature. The air is then directed through a hose to the charge air cooler and through another hose to the intake manifold of the engine. The air entering the engine has been cooled by about 50° to 100°F (10° to 38°C). This cooling process enables more efficient burning of fuel resulting in fewer emissions.

To guarantee optimum performance of the system, keep the surfaces of the charge air cooler, condenser and radiator clean and free of debris. Periodically check the hoses leading to and from the charge air cooler for cracks or loose clamps resulting in loss of pressure and reduced engine performance.

Brake System

Brake Master Cylinder – Brake Fluid Level Check

The fluid level of the master cylinder should be checked when performing under the hood service, or immediately if the "Brake System Warning Light" indicates system failure.

The brake master cylinder has a translucent plastic reservoir. On the outboard side of the reservoir, there is a "MAX" mark and an "MIN" mark. The fluid level must be kept within these two marks. Do not add fluid above the full mark because leakage may occur at the cap.

With disc brakes, the fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake linings wear. However, an unexpected drop in fluid level may be caused by a leak and a system check should be conducted.

Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in this section for the correct fluid type.

WARNING!

- **Use only manufacturer's recommended brake fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in this section for the correct fluid type. Using the wrong type of brake fluid can severely damage your brake system and/or impair its performance. The proper type of brake fluid for your vehicle is also labeled on the original factory installed hydraulic master cylinder reservoir.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **To avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture, use only new brake fluid or fluid that has been in a tightly closed container. Keep the master cylinder reservoir cap secured at all times. Brake fluid in a open container absorbs moisture from the air resulting in a lower boiling point. This may cause it to boil unexpectedly during hard or prolonged braking, resulting in sudden brake failure. This could result in a accident.**
- **Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts, causing the brake fluid to catch fire. Brake fluid can also damage painted and vinyl surfaces, care should be taken to avoid its contact with these surfaces.**

(Continued)

WARNING! (Continued)

- **Do not allow petroleum based fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Brake seal components could be damaged, causing partial or complete brake failure. This could result in an accident.**

Clutch Hydraulic System

The clutch hydraulic system is a sealed maintenance-free system. In the event of leakage or other malfunction, the system must be replaced.

Transfer Case – If Equipped

Drain And Refill

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" in this manual for the proper maintenance intervals.

Lubricant Selection

Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in this section for the correct fluid type.

Fluid Level Check
This fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. The fluid level should be to the bottom edge of the filler plug hole with the vehicle in a level position.

Manual Transmission – If Equipped

Lubricant Selection
Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in this section for the correct fluid type.

Fluid Level Check
The fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. If the level of the lubricant is more than 1/2 in (12 mm) below the bottom of the filler hole while the vehicle is on level ground, enough lubricant should be added to bring the level to 1/4 in (6 mm) below the bottom of the filler hole.

Automatic Transmission – If Equipped

Lubricant Selection
Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts" in this section for the correct fluid type.

Fluid Level Check – AS68RC
Check the fluid level while the transmission is at normal operating temperature. This occurs after at least 15 miles (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature, the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips.

To properly check the transmission fluid, the following procedure must be used.

1. The vehicle must be on level ground.

2. Operate the engine at idle speed for a minimum of 60 seconds and normal operating temperature.

3. Fully apply the parking brake and press the brake pedal.

4. Place the shift lever momentarily into each gear position ending with the shift lever in PARK. Make sure the engine is running at idle speed.

5. Remove the dipstick and determine if the fluid is hot or cold. Hot fluid is approximately 160°F to 175°F (70°C to 82°C). This is the normal operating temperature after the vehicle has been driven at least 15 miles (25 km). The fluid cannot be comfortably held between the fingertips. Only use the cold region of the dipstick as a rough reference when doing initial oil level set after transmission rebuild or transmission refill.

6. Wipe the dipstick clean and reinsert it until seated.

7. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. Verify that a solid coating of oil is seen on both sides of the dipstick. If the fluid is low, add MOPAR® AS68RC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent as required into the dipstick tube. **Do not overfill. Never use any ATF other than MOPAR® AS68RC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent.** After adding any quantity of oil through the dipstick tube, wait a minimum of two minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

NOTE: If it is necessary to check the transmission below the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two COLD (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at approximately 70°F to 85°F (20°C to 30°C). If the fluid level is correctly established at room temperature, it should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes when the transmission reaches 160°F to 175°F (70°C to 82°C).

CAUTION!

Be aware that if the fluid level is below 50°F (10°C), it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce a accurate reading.

8. Check for leaks. Release the parking brake.

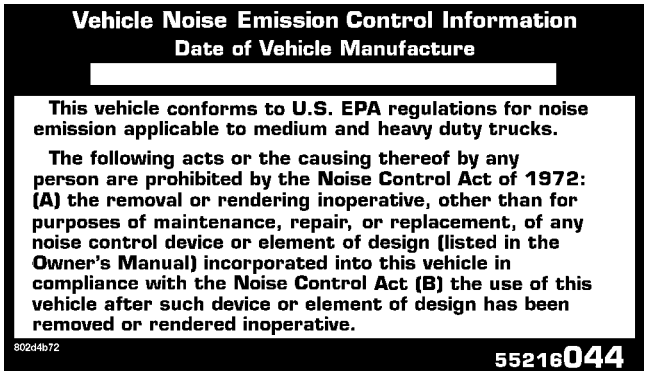
NOTE: To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or adding fluid, make sure that the dipstick cap is properly reseated. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated position, as long as the seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

Fluid and Filter Change

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" in this manual for the proper maintenance intervals.

Noise Control System Required Maintenance & Warranty

All vehicles built over 10,000 lbs. (4 535 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and manufactured for sale and use in the United States are required to comply with the Federal Government's Exterior Noise Regulations. These vehicles can be identified by the Noise Emission Control Label located in the operator's compartment.



Required Maintenance For Noise Control Systems

The following maintenance services must be performed every six months or 7,500 miles (12 000 km) whichever comes first, to assure proper operation of the noise control systems. In addition, inspection and service should be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Proper maintenance of the entire vehicle will help the effectiveness of the noise control systems.

Exhaust System

Inspect the entire exhaust system for leaks and damaged parts. Devices such as hangers, clamps, and U-bolts should be tight and in good condition. Damaged components, burned or blown out mufflers, burned or rusted out exhaust pipes should be replaced according to the procedures and specifications outlined in the appropriate service manual.

Air Cleaner Assembly

Inspect air cleaner housing for proper assembly and fit. Make certain that the air cleaner is properly positioned and that the cover is tight. Check all hoses leading to the air cleaner for tightness. The air filter element must also be clean and serviced according to the instructions outlined in the Maintenance Schedule section of this manual.

Tampering With Noise Control System Prohibited

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) the removal or rendering inoperative by any person, other than for purposes of maintenance, repair, or

replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts presumed to constitute tampering are the acts listed below.

- **AIR CLEANER**
  - – Removal of the air cleaner.
  - – Removal of the air cleaner filter element from the air cleaner housing.
  - – Removal of the air ducting.
- **EXHAUST SYSTEM**
  - – Removal or rendering inoperative exhaust system components including the muffler or tailpipe.
- **ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM**
  - – Removal or rendering inoperative the fan clutch.
  - – Removal of the fan shroud.

Noise Emission Warranty

The manufacturer warrants that this vehicle as manufactured by the manufacturer, was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time it left the manufacturer's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built and equipped by the manufacturer, and is not limited to any particular part, component or system of the vehicle manufactured by the manufacturer. Defects in design, assembly or in any part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by the manufacturer, which, at the time it left the manufacturer's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

Maintenance Log and Service Chart (Diesel Engines)

Noise Systems Maintenance Chart and Service Log — Insert Month, Day, Year under column mileage closest to the mileage at which service was performed.

MILES KILOMETERS	7,500 12 000	15,000 24 000	22,500 36 000	30,000 48 000	37,500 60 000	45,000 72 000	52,500 84 000	60,000 96 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

MILES KILOMETERS	67,500 108 000	75,000 120 000	82,500 132 000	90,000 144 000	97,500 156 000	105,000 168 000	112,500 180 000	120,000 192 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

Appearance Care and Protection from Corrosion

Protection of Body and Paint from Corrosion

Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice, and those that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons, are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants, road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated, extreme hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse affect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

What Causes Corrosion?

Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.

The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near seacoast localities.
- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.

Washing

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using MOPAR® Car Wash or equivalent, or a mild car wash soap and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use MOPAR® Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover or equivalent to remove.
- Use a high quality cleaner wax, such as MOPAR® Cleaner Wax or equivalent to remove road film, stains and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.
- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

CAUTION!

Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder which will scratch metal and painted surfaces.

Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels and trunk be kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.

- If your vehicle is damaged due to an accident or similar cause which destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.
- Use MOPAR® Touch Up Paint or equivalent on scratches as soon as possible. Your authorized dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

Wheel and Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome-plated wheels should be cleaned regularly with a mild soap and water to prevent corrosion. To remove heavy soil and/or excessive brake dust, use MOPAR® Wheel Cleaner or equivalent or select a nonabrasive, non-acidic cleaner. Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, or metal polishes. Only MOPAR® or equivalent is recommended. Do not use oven cleaner. Avoid automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or harsh brushes that may damage the wheels' protective finish.

Stain Repel Fabric Cleaning Procedure – If Equipped

Stain Repel seats may be cleaned in the following manner:

- Remove as much of the stain as possible by blotting with a clean, dry towel.
- Blot any remaining stain with a clean, damp towel.

- For tough stains, apply MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent, or a mild soap solution to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- For grease stains, apply MOPAR® Multi-Purpose Cleaner or equivalent to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- Do not use any harsh solvents or any other form of protectants on Stain Repel products.

Interior Care

Use MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

Use MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent to clean vinyl upholstery.

MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia-based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

WARNING!

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

Cleaning Headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlights and fog lights (if equipped) that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other aggressive material to clean the lenses.

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with MOPAR® Glass Cleaner or any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or the right rear quarter window equipped with the radio antenna. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments which may scratch the elements. When cleaning the rearview mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or rag that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft rag. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp rag.
2. Dry with a soft tissue.

Seat Belt Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the car to wash them.

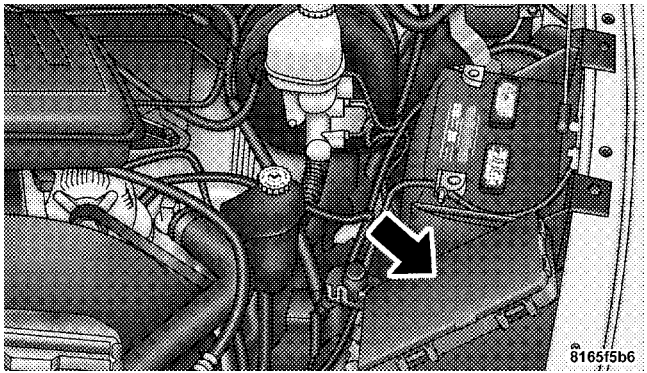
Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

Dry with a soft tissue.

FUSES

Integrated Power Module

The integrated power module is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses and mini fuses. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped on the inside cover, otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.



Integrated Power Module

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
1		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet Console
2		20 Amp Yellow	Cabin Compartment Node (CCN) Door Locks

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
3		—	—
4		15 Amp Blue	Aisin Transmission Controls (Diesel Only)
5		20 Amp Yellow	Power Sunroof
6		10 Amp Red	Vistronic Fan/Wastegate Solenoid
7		—	—
8		10 Amp Red	Heated Mirrors
9	30 Amp Pink		Off Road Module Power
10		5 Amp Orange	Trx-Off Rd Pkg Sen (Gas Engine Only) **NOTE: Insert 5 amp fuse in this cavity to enable the TRX capability (If Equipped).**
11		20 Amp Yellow	Ignition Off Draw (IOD)-Cabin Compartment Node (CCN)/Radio/ Under Hood Lamp/ Wireless Control Module (WCM)/Satellite Digital Audio Receiver (SDARS)/Hands Free Module (HFM)/EOM
12	30 Amp Pink		Electric Brake
13		25 Amp Natural	Power-Battery RWAL/ ABS Module Feed
14		15 Amp Blue	Park Lights Left
15		20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Park Lights

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
16		15 Amp Blue	Park Lights Right
17		—	—
18	40 Amp Green		ABS Pump
19	30 Amp Pink		Trailer Tow Battery Feed
20		10 Amp Red	Occupant Restraints Controller (ORC) 2
21		10 Amp Red	Occupant Restraints/ Pass Disable Switch
22		2 Amp Gray	IGN Switch Feed
23		10 Amp Red	HVAC
24	20 Amp Blue		AISIN Relay Feed (Diesel Only)
25		10 Amp Red	Power Mirror/T-Case Brake
26		20 Amp Yellow	Brake Switch/Center High Mount Stop Light (CHMSL)/Aftermarket CHMSL
27	40 Amp Green		Power Seats
28		10 Amp Red	Power Run/Start-PCM/ Steering Angle Sensor
29		10 Amp Red	4X4 Switch/Pass Dr Switch/EC Mirror

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
30		15 Amp Blue	Power Run/Start-ABS/ RWAL/Smart Bar/YAW Sensor/Universal Exhaust Gas Oxygen (Uego) Sensor Controller
31		10 Amp Red	PCM (Gas)/TCM (Diesel 58RFE)
32		10 Amp Red	Power Ignition Run — Adjustable Pedals LED
33		10 Amp Red	Power-IGN Run — HVAC
34		—	—
35		15 Amp Blue	Cabin Compartment Node (CCN) Illumination
36		25 Amp Natural	Audio_Amplifier
37		15 Amp Blue	Variable Gate Turbo (VGT) — Turbo Diesel
38		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet IP
39		10 Amp Red	Seatbelt Tension Reducer/Power IGN Run/Acc
40		20 Amp Yellow	Power IGN Run/Acc — Cigar Lighter/Rear Power Point
41		—	—
42	30 Amp Pink		Diesel PCM (Diesel Only)

CAUTION!

- **When installing the Integrated Power Module cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the Integrated Power Module, and possibly result in a electrical system failure.**
- **When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.**

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you are storing your vehicle for more than 21 days, we recommend that you take the following steps to minimize the drain on your vehicle's battery:

- Disconnect the Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) fuse located in the Integrated Power Module, located in the engine compartment. The IOD cavity includes a snap-in retainer that allows the fuse to be disconnected without removing it from the fuse block.
- As an alternative to the above steps you may disconnect the negative cables from both batteries.
- Any time you store your vehicle or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

NOTE:

- When reinstalling the IOD fuse push firmly until fully seated; the gauges in the instrument cluster will do a full sweep when the ignition switch is turned to the RUN position. This is a normal condition.
- When the vehicle is shipped from the factory, the IOD fuse is in the up or extracted position. If the radio, interior lamps, keyless entry or other features do not work with the key OFF, check the position of the fuse (or check to see if the fuse is blown) to ensure that it is fully seated. When the IOD fuse is extracted, the instrument cluster in the odometer window will display "NO FUSE."

REPLACEMENT BULBS

LIGHT BULBS — Inside	Bulb No.
Overhead Console Lamps	TS 212-2
Dome Lamp	7679

NOTE: For lighted switches, see your authorized dealer for replacement instructions.

All of the inside bulbs are brass or glass-wedge base. Aluminum base bulbs are not approved.

LIGHT BULBS — Exterior	Bulb No.
Backup	1156
Fog Lamp	9006LL
Headlamp (Halogen)	H13
Side Marker, Park & Turn Signal	1157
Rear License Plate Lamp	1157
Rear Cargo Lamp	912
Tail & Stop	1157

BULB REPLACEMENT

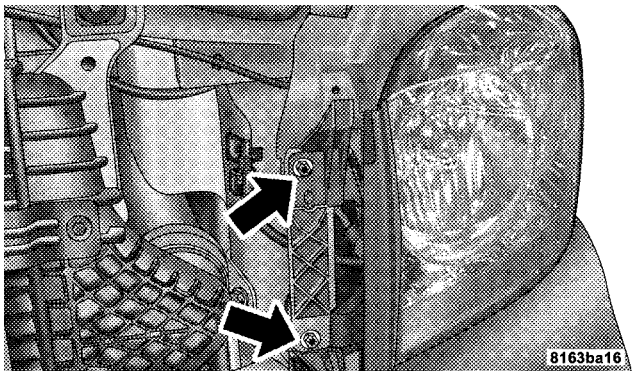
Front Headlamp (Halogen)/Park and Turn Signal Lamps

CAUTION!

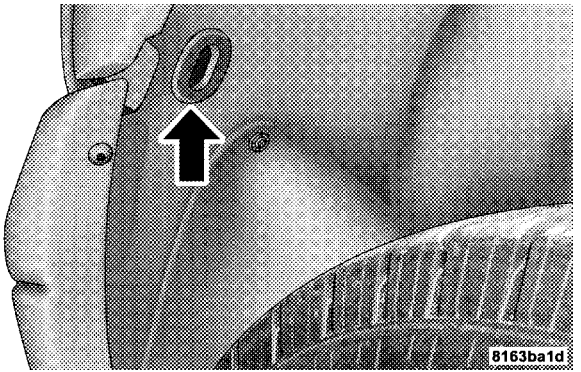
This is a halogen bulb. Avoid touching the glass with your fingers. Reduced bulb life will result.

1. Open the hood.

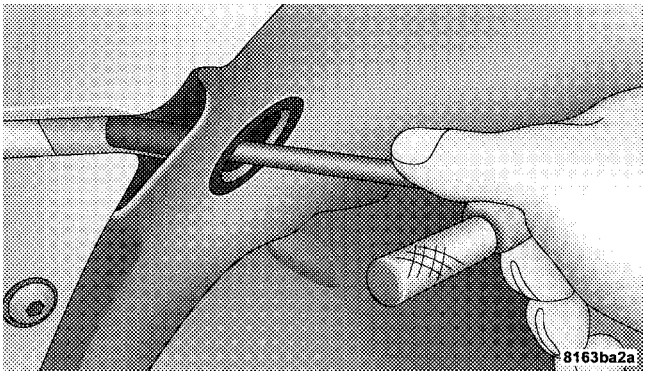
2. Remove the two bolts from the front of the headlamp housing.



3. Remove the plug from the inner fender well.

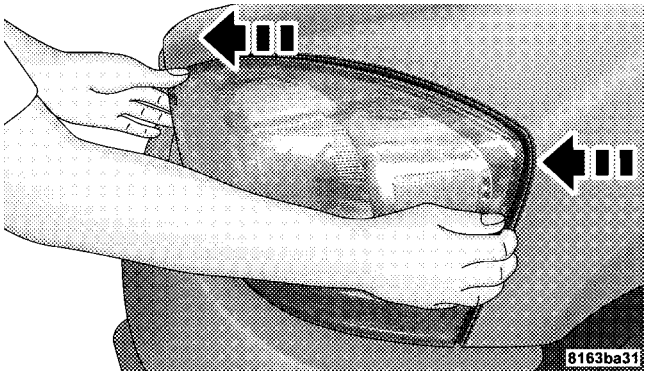


4. Remove the nut through the access hole.

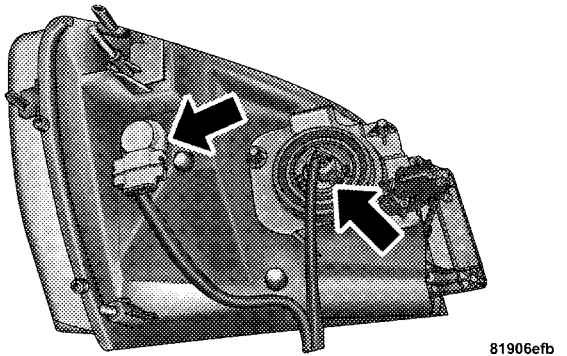


5. Pull the housing out from the fender to allow room to disconnect the electrical connectors.

NOTE: For easier removal, pull the headlamp assembly straight forward, applying the greatest amount of force to the outer edge of the headlamp assembly.



6. Unlock and pull connector straight from the base of the headlamp halogen bulb.



7. Twist connector on the side marker/turn signal/park lamp bulb ¼ turn and remove connector and bulb from housing.

8. Remove housing from vehicle with headlamp halogen bulb in housing.

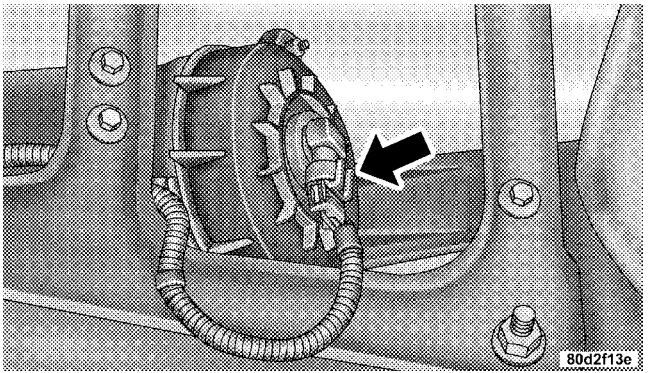
9. Twist the headlamp bulb ¼ turn and remove the headlamp bulb from the housing.

10. Replace headlamp or side marker/turn signal/park lamp bulb. Do not touch the headlamp bulb.

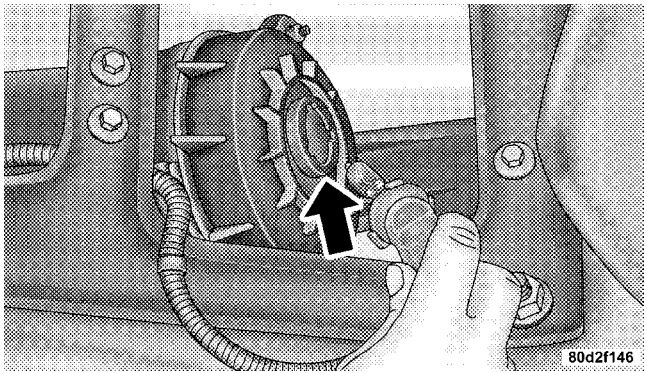
11. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

Fog Lamps

1. Reach under the vehicle, unlock and twist connector counterclockwise ¼ turn and remove connector and bulb from housing.



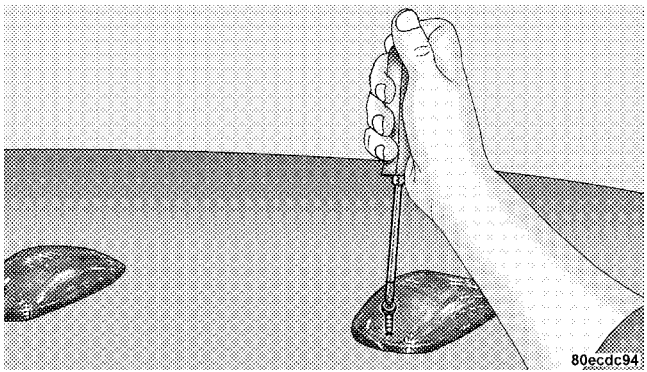
2. Pull bulb straight from the connector.



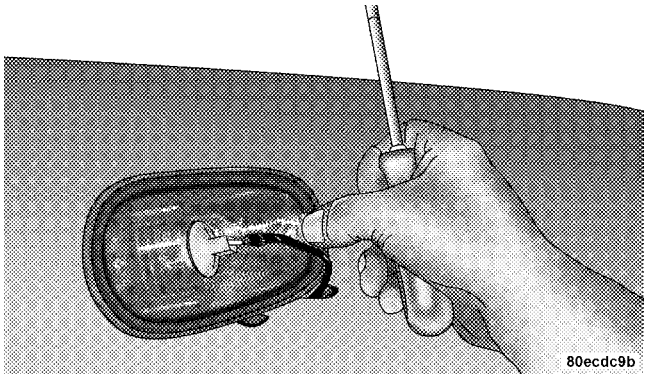
3. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

Cab Top Clearance Lamps — If Equipped

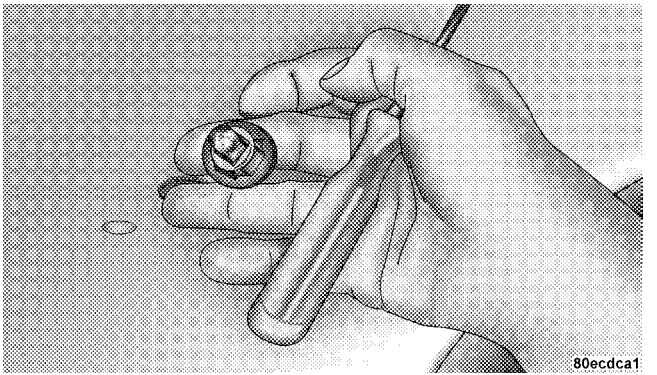
1. Remove the two screws from the top of the lamp.



2. Rotate the socket ¼ turn and pull it from the lamp assembly.



3. Pull the bulb straight from its socket and replace.



FLUID CAPACITIES

	U.S.	Metric
Fuel (Approximate)		
Standard Rear Tank	52 Gallons	197 Liters
Optional Midship Tank	22 Gallons	83 Liters
Engine Oil with Filter		
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine	12 Quarts	11.4 Liters
Cooling System		
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine (MOPAR® Antifreeze/ Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula) or equivalent.	5.7 Gallons	21.4 Liters

FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS AND GENUINE PARTS

Engine

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Engine Coolant	MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) or equivalent.
Engine Oil	In ambient temperatures below 0°F (-18°C), 5W-40 **synthetic** engine oil that meets Chrysler Materials Standard MS-10902 and the API CJ-4 engine oil category is required. In ambient temperatures above 0°F (-18°C), 15W-40 engine oil that meets Chrysler Materials Standard MS-10902 and the API CJ-4 engine oil category is required.
Engine Oil Filter	MOPAR® Engine Oil Filter or equivalent.
Engine Fuel Filter	MOPAR® Fuel Filter or equivalent. Must meet 5 micron rating. **Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturers filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.**

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Crankcase Ventilation Filter	MOPAR® CCV Filter or equivalent.
Fuel Selection	Use good quality diesel fuel from a reputable supplier in your vehicle. Federal law requires that you must fuel this vehicle with Ultra Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (15 ppm Sulfur maximum) and prohibits the use of Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (500 ppm Sulfur maximum) to avoid damage to the emissions control system. For most year-round service, No. 2 diesel fuel meeting ASTM specification D-975 Grade S15 will provide good performance. If the vehicle is exposed to extreme cold (below 20°F or -7°C), or is required to operate at colder-than-normal conditions for prolonged periods, use climatized No. 2 diesel fuel or dilute the No. 2 diesel fuel with 50% No. 1 diesel fuel. This will provide better protection from fuel gelling or wax-plugging of the fuel filters. **This vehicle is fully compatible with biodiesel blends up to 5% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-975.**

Chassis

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Automatic Transmission (6-Speed AS68RC) – If Equipped	MOPAR® AS68RC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent.
Manual Transmission (G-56) – If Equipped	MOPAR® ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent licensed ATF+4® product.
Clutch Linkage	MOPAR® Multi-Purpose Grease, NLGI Grade 2 E.P. or equivalent.
Transfer Case	MOPAR® ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent licensed ATF+4® product.
Front and Rear Axle (4500/5500 Models)	GL-5 SAE 75W-90 Synthetic (MS-9763) or equivalent.
Brake Master Cylinder	MOPAR® DOT 3 and SAE J1703 should be used or equivalent. If DOT 3 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable. Use only recommended brake fluids.
Power Steering Reservoir	MOPAR® Power Steering Fluid +4, MOPAR® ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent licensed ATF+4® product.

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

CONTENTS

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

CAUTION!

Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

At Each Stop for Fuel

- Check the engine oil level about 30 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.

Once a Month

- Inspect the batteries, and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, and transmission and transfer case (if equipped), add as needed.

At Each Oil Change

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the exhaust system.
- Check the automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped).
- Check the manual transmission fluid level (if equipped).
- Check the coolant level, hoses, and clamps.
- Lubricate outer tie rod ends.

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

Oil Change Indicator System

Ram Truck Chassis Cab
(3500, 4500, and 5500 Models)

Replace the engine oil and oil filter every 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, or sooner if prompted by the oil change indicator system (if equipped). Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.

Perform Service Indicator

Your vehicle will require emissions maintenance at a set interval. To help remind you when this maintenance is due, the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) will display "Perform Service". When the "Perform Service" message is displayed on the EVIC it is necessary to have the emissions maintenance performed. Emissions maintenance may include replacing the Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) filter element, cleaning of the EGR Cooler, cleaning of the EGR Valve, and/or cleaning of the turbocharger. The procedure for clearing and resetting the "Perform Service" indicator message is located in the appropriate Service Information.

Required Maintenance Intervals

Refer to the Maintenance Schedules on the following pages for the required maintenance intervals.

7,500 Miles (12,000 km) or 6 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

15,000 Miles (24,000 km) or 12 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

_____

Odometer Reading Date

_____

Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____

Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

22,500 Miles (36,000 km) or 18 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace if necessary.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect brake linings.
- ❑ Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

30,000 Miles (48,000 km) or 24 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the wheel bearings.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- ❑ Check the transfer case fluid (4x4).
- ❑ Change automatic transmission fluid (Chassis Cab Only).

_____

Odometer Reading Date

_____

Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____

Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

37,500 Miles (60,000 km) or 30 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

45,000 Miles (72,000 km) or 36 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace as necessary.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect brake linings.
- ❑ Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

_____

Odometer Reading Date

_____

Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____

Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

52,500 Miles (84,000 km) or 42 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

60,000 Miles (96,000 km) or 48 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the wheel bearings.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- ❑ Change automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (Chassis Cab Only).
- ❑ Inspect the manual transmission fluid, add if necessary.
- ❑ Change the transfer case fluid (4x4).

_____

Odometer Reading Date

_____

Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____

Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

67,500 Miles (108,000 km) or 54 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect brake linings.
- ❑ Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.
- ❑ **Replace Crankcase Ventilation Filter (CCV).**

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

75,000 Miles (120,000 km) or 60 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Flush and replace engine coolant at 60 months, if not replaced at 97,500 miles (157 000 km).
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace as necessary.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

82,500 Miles (132,000 km) or 66 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

90,000 Miles (144,000 km) or 72 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace as required.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the wheel bearings.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect brake linings.
- ❑ Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- ❑ Check the transfer case fluid (4x4).
- ❑ Change automatic transmission fluid (Chassis Cab Only).

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

97,500 Miles (156,000 km) or 78 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Flush and replace engine coolant, if not replaced at 60 months.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

105,000 Miles (168,000 km) or 84 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace as required.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Flush and replace power steering fluid.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

_____

Odometer Reading Date

_____

Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____

Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

112,500 Miles (180,000 km) or 90 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect brake linings.
- ❑ Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

120,000 Miles (192,000 km) or 96 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace as required.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the wheel bearings.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- ❑ Change automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (Chassis Cab Only).
- ❑ Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.
- ❑ Change the transfer case fluid (4x4).

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

127,500 Miles (204,000 km) or 102 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

135,000 Miles (216,000 km) or 108 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace as required.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect brake linings.
- ❑ Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- ❑ **Replace Crankcase Ventilation Filter (CCV).**

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

142,500 Miles (228,000 km) or 114 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

150,000 Miles (240,000 km) or 120 Months Maintenance Service Schedule

- ❑ When prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System, the engine oil and filter must be changed. If not prompted by the Engine Oil Indicator System within 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months since the last oil and filter change, change the engine oil and engine oil filter. **Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 7,500 miles (12 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.**
- ❑ Rotate tires.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter element.
- ❑ Inspect drive belt, replace as required.
- ❑ Adjust valve lash clearance.
- ❑ Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).
- ❑ Lubricate outer tie rod ends.
- ❑ Inspect the wheel bearings.
- ❑ Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.
- ❑ Flush and replace engine coolant at 120 months, if not replaced at 97,500 miles (157 000 km).
- ❑ Inspect the front (4x4) and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- ❑ Check the transfer case fluid (4x4).
- ❑ Change automatic transmission fluid (Chassis Cab Only).

_____
Odometer Reading Date

_____
Repair Order # Dealer Code

_____
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

* This maintenance is not required if belt was previously replaced.

**The EGR Valve and EGR Cooler maintenance will be covered by the manufacturer only at this maintenance interval, for vehicles in California, Maine, Massachusetts, New York, Vermont, Connecticut, Oregon, Rhode Island.

CAUTION!

*****The manufacturer highly recommends that all cooling system service, maintenance, and repairs be performed by your local authorized dealer.**

WARNING!

- **You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.**
- **Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident**

IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

CONTENTS

SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

Prepare For The Appointment

If you're having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealers are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealers have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer's service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealership. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealership is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealership name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

Chrysler Group LLC Customer Center
P.O. Box 21–8004
Auburn Hills, MI 48321–8004
Phone: (800) 992-1997

Chrysler Canada Inc. Customer Center
P.O. Box 1621
Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6
Phone: (800) 465–2001

In Mexico contact:
Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240
Sante Fe C.P. 05109
Mexico, D. F.
In Mexico City: 5081-7568
Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1–800–380–CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1 800 855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922.

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You'll be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

WARNING!

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

WARRANTY INFORMATION (U.S. Vehicles Only)

See the Warranty Information Booklet, located on the DVD, for the terms and provisions of Chrysler Group LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle.

MOPAR® PARTS

MOPAR® fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from an authorized dealer. They are recommended for your vehicle in order to help keep the vehicle operating at its best.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

In the 50 United States and Washington, D.C.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your authorized dealer, and the manufacturer.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153), or go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should write to: Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls, 2780 Sheffield Road, Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9.

PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted. If you prefer mailing your payment, please call for an order form.

NOTE: A street address is required when ordering manuals (no P.O. Boxes).

- *Service Manuals*

  These comprehensive Service Manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing Chrysler Group LLC vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

- *Diagnostic Procedure Manuals*

  Diagnostic Procedure Manuals are filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations. These practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and drivability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

- *Owner's Manuals*

  These Owner's Manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific Chrysler Group LLC vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Call toll free at:

- **1–800–890–4038 (U.S.)**
- **1–800–387–1143 (Canada)**

Or

Visit us on the Worldwide Web at:

- **www.techauthority.com**

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature Grades

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

INDEX

INSTALLATION OF RADIO TRANSMITTING EQUIPMENT

Special design considerations are incorporated into this vehicle's electronic system to provide immunity to radio frequency signals. Mobile two-way radios and telephone equipment must be installed properly by trained personnel. The following must be observed during installation.

The positive power connection should be made directly to the battery and fused as close to the battery as possible. The negative power connection should be made to body sheet metal adjacent to the negative battery connection. This connection should not be fused.

Antennas for two-way radios should be mounted on the roof or the rear area of the vehicle. Care should be used in mounting antennas with magnet bases. Magnets may affect the accuracy or operation of the compass on vehicles so equipped.

The antenna cable should be as short as practical and routed away from the vehicle wiring when possible. Use only fully shielded coaxial cable.

Carefully match the antenna and cable to the radio to ensure a low Standing Wave Ratio (SWR).

Mobile radio equipment with output power greater than normal may require special precautions.

All installations should be checked for possible interference between the communications equipment and the vehicle's electronic systems.

DODGE

SERVICE

STICK WITH THE SPECIALISTS®

Chrysler Group LLC

10DD43-126-AA First Edition Printed in U.S.A.